Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the Vodafone 804SH.

• For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
• This manual was created exclusively for Vodafone 804SH handsets sold in Japan.
• Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
• Accessible Vodafone services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

**804SH is compatible with both W-CDMA and GSM network technologies.**

Note

• Copying this manual in whole or part without authorisation is prohibited.
• Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
• Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact
  Customer Service, General Information (see **P.18-24**) about unclear or missing information.

Symbols

Multi Selector

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor and scroll, etc.

In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.
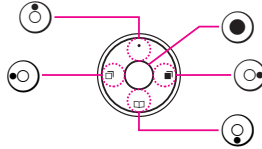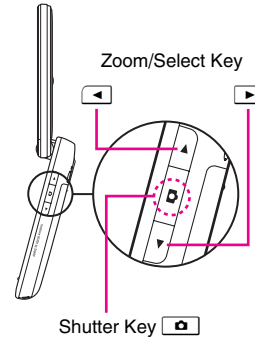
- Basic Multi Selector Operations
  - ■ : Press or
  - ■ : Press or
  - ■ : Press , , or

Side Keys

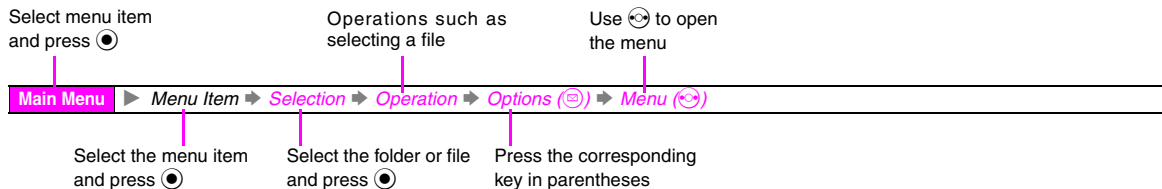Use Side Keys to control compatible functions such as mobile camera.
In this manual, Side Keys are indicated as shown below.

Zoom/Select Key

Shutter Key

Note ▶ In this manual, most operations are described with clamshell open (see **P.1-10**) in Standby.
Sample screen shots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Index Menu are abbreviated as follows:

Select menu item
and press ●

Operations such as
selecting a file

Use ⊙ to open
the menu

Main Menu ▶ *Menu Item* ➡ *Selection* ➡ *Operation* ➡ *Options (◙)* ➡ *Menu (⊙)*

Select the menu item
and press ●

Select the folder or file
and press ●

Press the corresponding
key in parentheses

In this **Vodafone 804SH Instruction Manual**, **Vodafone 804SH** is abbreviated as **804SH**.
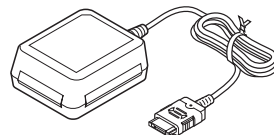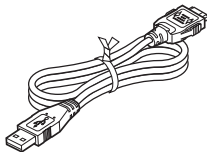
Accessories

■**Lithium-ion Battery (Type 1) (SHBAA1)**
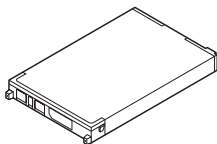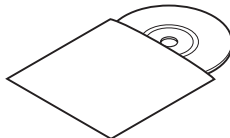
■**LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones (white) (ZTBAA1)**
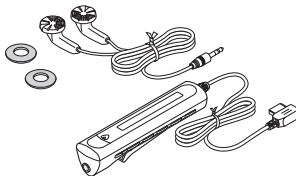
■**AC Charger (SHCAA1)**

■**USB Cable (Black)★**

■**Utility Software (CD-ROM)★***

*Upgrades or updates of included Utility Software may become available on the Vodafone Website (http://www.vodafone.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest version of Utility Software (excluding SD-Jukebox) and download as required.
★Complimentary sample not available for purchase

Note ▶ Supplied Utility Software is designed exclusively for 804SH.

Tip ▶ • For accessory-related information, please contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
• 804SH is compatible with miniSD™ Memory Card; miniSD™ Memory Card is not included in this package. Purchase miniSD™ Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.
• In this manual, miniSD™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card".

Contents

3   Entering Characters

8　Memory Card

9　Managing Files (Data Folder)

Contents

11 Tools

Contents

Vodafone live!

13 Vodafone live! Basics

14 Messaging

Contents

15 Web

16 V-applications

17 Vodafone live! FeliCa

18 Appendix

Safety Precautions

- Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

■Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on.

Symbols and their meanings are described below:

⚠	**DANGER**	**Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠	**WARNING**	**Risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠	**CAUTION**	**Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use**

■Symbols

🚫🚫🚫🚫🚫	❗🔌	⚠
Prohibited Actions	**Compulsory Actions**	**Attention Required**

⚠**DANGER**

Handset, Battery & Charger

Use specified battery, Charger and Desktop Holder only (see P.iii).

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

Keep metal objects away from Charger terminals. Keep handset away from necklaces, hairpins, etc.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury.
Use a case to carry handset.

Battery

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire.

Do not:

- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Open/modify/disassemble battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or deformed battery
- Use non-specified charger (see **P.iii**)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge battery near fire or sources of heat; or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment

If battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.

⚠**WARNING**

Handset, Battery & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into the handset, Charger or Desktop Holder.

Do not insert metal or flammable objects into handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause fire or electric shock. Keep out of children's reach.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.

Fire or electric shock may result.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.

Keep the handset, Charger and Desktop Holder away from chemicals or liquids; fire or electric shock may result.

Keep battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder away from microwave ovens.

Battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may leak, burst, overheat or ignite, leading to accidents or injury.

Do not disassemble or modify handset or related hardware.

• Do not open handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact Vodafone Customer Centre, Customer Assistance for repairs.
• Do not modify handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; fire or electric shock may result.

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

CAUTION:
Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 & A2:2001

CLASS 1 LED Product
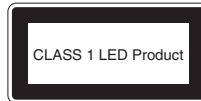
CAUTION-CLASS 1M
LED RADIATION WHEN
OPEN DO NOT VIEW
DIRECTLY WITH
OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS
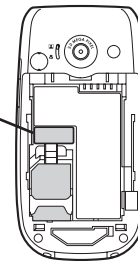
If water or foreign matter is inside handset:

Discontinue handset use to prevent fire/electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger, then contact Vodafone Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.

⚠WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Avoid sources of fire.
Prevent fire or explosion. Do not use handset in the presence of gas or fine particles (coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Do not subject handset to strong shocks or impacts.
Strong shocks or impacts to handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may cause malfunction or injury.
Should handset be damaged, remove battery then contact Vodafone Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.
Discontinue handset use; fire or electric shock may occur.

If an abnormality occurs:
If a handset emits an unusual sound, smoke or odour, discontinue use; may cause fire or electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger; contact Vodafone Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.

Handset

Keep Memory Card and Memory Card Adapter out of children's reach.
If swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.

Handset

Take measures to prevent accidents.
- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (effective 1 November 2004).
- Do not use headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially at level/road crossings to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones or handstrap.
May result in injury or breakage.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.
Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Adjusting vibration and Ringtone settings:
Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.

During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.
There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

⚠️WARNING

Charger

Use only the specified voltage. 🚫

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.
- **AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input**
  - ■ Vodafone is not liable for problems caused by charging handset abroad.
- **In-Car Charger: DC 12V-24V Input**

Do not use commercially available transformers. 🚫

Use of AC Charger with commercially available transformers may cause fire, electric shock or damage.

Do not use In-Car Charger if vehicle has a positive earth. 🚫

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a negative earth.

Charger care
- Do not touch blades with wet hands. Electric shock may occur. 🚫
- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet; may cause excess heat/fire.
- Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals. 🚫

May cause overheating, fire or electric shock. Keep metal away from terminals.

Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles. 🚫

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.

Take measures to prevent accidents. ❗

Secure In-Car Charger to avoid injury or accidents.

Damaged AC Charger/In-Car Charger cord: ❗

May cause fire or electric shock; contact Vodafone Customer Centre, Customer Assistance to replace.

During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.

Charger/Desktop Holder use and children: ❗

May cause electric shock/injury; keep out of reach.

⚠WARNING

Battery

- If battery does not charge properly, stop charging. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
- If there is leakage or abnormal odour, avoid fire sources. Battery may catch fire or burst.

If there is abnormal odour, excessive heat, discolouration or distortion, remove battery from handset.
It may leak, overheat or explode.

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.
Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.
Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities:
- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a mobile handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.

Consult manufacturer for radio wave effects on electronic medical equipment.

⚠CAUTION

Handset, Battery & Charger

Handset care
- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from direct sunlight (inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discolouration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

Usage environment
- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, telephone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

Handset

Handset temperature
Handset may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.

Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).
Handset may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries.

Volume settings
Moderate handset volume; excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones
- Do not force plugs or pull on cord; may damage plugs or cord.
- Keep plugs clean to avoid noise and malfunction.

Inside vehicles
Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.

⚠CAUTION

Handset

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.
See handset materials below. Some materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Main Display side)	Magnesium alloy/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish)
Housing (External Display side), hinge cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting, discontinuous deposition)
Faceplate (External Display side)	Acrylic resin, PET sheet, Acrylic UV curing painting
Housing (Keypad/Battery side), battery cover, Antenna terminal cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Display window, lens cover	Acrylic resin
Portrait/Macro Selector	ABS resin
Lens cover ornament	ABS resin/Chrome plating
Logo badge	Acrylic UV curing resin, aluminium (base)
Shortcuts and A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, Multimedia/Text Key, Multi Selector (Cursor Keys), Mail Key, Vodafone Web Key, Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Keypad, Side Keys	PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys)	PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: discontinuous deposition, acrylic painting)
Multi Selector (centre)	PC resin/ABS resin/Chrome plating (sealer: nickel, copper)
Strap Eyelet pin	Stainless steel
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Memory Card Slot cover, VIDEO OUT/Headphone/Optical Digital Line In Connector cover, External Device Connector cover	PC resin/Elastomeric resin/Acrylic UV curing painting
Battery	PC resin
Charger Terminal	Phosphor bronze, gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screw	SWCH16A/Trivalent chromate (white) (green)
Screw cover, stop pad	Urethane rubber, polyester film, Acrylic adhesive
USIM pin	Copper alloy, gold plating (sealer: nickel)
USIM cover	SUS

⚠**CAUTION**

Charger

Charger & In-Car Charger
- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. May overheat and cause injury.

Do not touch Desktop Holder while in use.
May cause burn injuries.

Use only the specified fuse.
1 A fuse for In-Car Charger.
Or may cause breakage/fire.

Always charge handset in a well-ventilated area.
Avoid covering/wrapping Charger and Desktop Holder; may cause damage/fire.

Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.
To avoid weakening the car battery, always start engine before charging the handset using In-Car Charger.

During periods of disuse
Always unplug AC Charger or In-Car Charger after use.

Handset maintenance
Always disconnect AC Charger or In-Car Charger when cleaning handset, to prevent shock/injury.

Installing In-Car Charger
Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.

⚠CAUTION

Battery

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite. 🚫

Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside a closed vehicle; may reduce battery performance or overheat. An overheated battery may cause fire. 🚫

Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate.

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a Vodafone shop, or follow the local disposal regulations. 🚫

Keep battery out of children's reach.

- Charge battery in ambient temperatures between of 5℃ and 35℃; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate. ⚠
- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odour or excessive heat, stop using battery and call Vodafone Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.

General Notes

General Use

- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.

- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
  Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
  Eavesdropping
  Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.

- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off).
  Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.
It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.
The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.430 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.442 W/kg.
Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.
The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.
The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on FCC ID APYHRO00044.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.395 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide**. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.697 W/kg.
As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.
The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

---

* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.
** Please see General Notes (Electromagnetic Waves) on **P.xxvi** for important notes regarding body worn operation.

SHARP

Declaration of Conformity

We   Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd

of
Azure House
Bagshot Road
Bracknell
Berkshire
RG12 7QY

Declare under sole responsibility that the product:

Model: **804SH**

Description: GSM 900/GSM 1800/ PCS 1900 Tri Band Dual Mode WCDMA Cellular Telephone, Bluetooth enabled

To which this declaration relates, is in conformity with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

- ETSI EN301511
- ETSI EN301908-1
- ETSI EN301908-2
- ETSI EN301489-1
- ETSI EN301489-7
- ETSI EN301489-17
- ETSI EN301489-24
- ETSI EN300328-2
- EN60950
- EN50360
- EN50371

We hereby declare that the above named product is in conformance to all the essential requirements of the Directive 1999/5/EC

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex [V] of directive 1999/5/EC has been followed related to Articles

- R&TTE Article 3.1 (a) Health and Safety
- R&TTE Article 3.1 (b) EMC
- R&TTE Article 3.2 spectrum Usage

With the involvement of the following Notified Body:

BABT, Balfour House, Churchfield Road , Walton-on-Thames, KT12 2TD

Identification mark: **0168**   (Notified Body)   **CE**

The technical documentation relevant to the above equipment will be held at:

Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd
Azure House
Bagshot Road
Bracknell
Berkshire
RG12 7QY

EU Representative: Clive Ross Bax

Authorised Person:

Name: CLIVE ROSS BAX   Signature:

Title: GENERAL MANAGER   Date: 18/NOV/2005

Document Control No: STE/BUSINESS/QA/2102

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. Vodafone is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within temperatures of 5°C to 35°C and humidity of 35% to 85%. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage colour filter and affect image colour.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging the Display.
- When using headphones, moderate volume to avoid sound bleed.

- **Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.**
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (toilet, bathroom, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- **Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.**
  - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Connect only the specified products to VIDEO OUT/Headphone Connector. Non-specified devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed, or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programmes, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The frequency band used for the Bluetooth® function of 804SH is shared with other industrial, scientific or medical equipment (microwave ovens, etc.), and used at premises radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").

1 Before using the Bluetooth® function, visually check that there are no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band nearby.

2 Should interference occur between 804SH and other radio stations, move to other place or stop the Bluetooth® function (stop the transmission) immediately.

3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information

From a Vodafone handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see **P.18-24** "Customer Service".

• This radio equipment operates in the 2.4 GHz band using the FH-SS modulation, and its maximum communication distance is 10 m.

2.4FH1

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.
ⓕ is a trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

Vodafone, Vodafone live! and the speech mark symbol are trademarks or registered trademarks of Vodafone Group Plc.

Video Call, V-application, Custom Screen and Movie Sha-mail are trademarks or registered trademarks of Vodafone K.K.

CP8 PATENT

CE 0168

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

- **804SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.**

  These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

- The highest SAR value for 804SH is 0.69 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level, and follow the testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

- Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites:
  - Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (Protection from Radio Wave Environment)
    http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm
  - Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
    http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html (Japanese only)
  *Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

Getting Started

Function & Feature Preview

Memory Card is required for items with grey background.
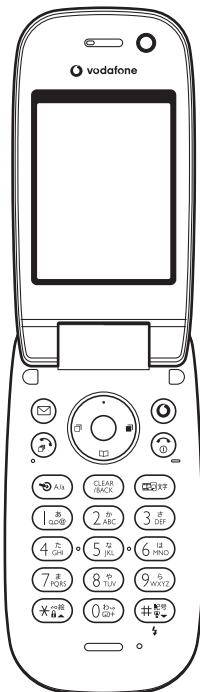
Vodafone live! FeliCa
Hold handset over compatible reader/writers to use e-money services, etc. all around Japan.
P.17-2

USIM Card
For use only with USIM Card-compatible Vodafone handsets; contains vital user information.
P.1-4

International Roaming
Make/receive calls, exchange mail or access Vodafone live! services even outside Japan.
P.2-15

Manner Mode
Press a single key to mute ringer and activate Answer Phone automatically.
P.2-17

Kanji Conversion
Entering Japanese text with Predictive or Previous Usage reduces required keystrokes.
P.3-10

Phone Book
Save up to 750 entries; add up to three phone numbers/three mail addresses to each.
P.4-2

Video Call
Place or receive video calls: send live video or previously saved still image during calls.
P.5-2

Camera
Capture still/video images shot with the 2.0 megapixel handset camera; send images via MMS.
P.6-2

Media Player
Play downloaded music and video images as well as those recorded/captured on handset.
P.7-2

Memory Card
Save files to Memory Card to expand handset memory or back-up your handset files.
P.8-2

Data Folder
Access handset image and sound files from here; files are organised by file type.
P.9-2

Bluetooth & Infrared
Wirelessly exchange handset files with compatible devices. Use Bluetooth headsets, etc.
P.10-20, **P.10-28**

Display
Change Wallpaper, System Graphics, Fonts, et cetera to customise handset interface.
P.10-3

Custom Screen
Load uni-themed Wallpaper, Indicators, Ringtones, and more, all at the same time.
P.10-4

Display Language
Change Phone Settings to make handset user interface appear in either English or Japanese.
P.10-4

Video Output
View previously saved handset still/video images on an external display or send real-time images.
P.10-8, **P.16-3**

Mass Storage
Use a PC to directly access Memory Card content while card is inserted into handset.
P.10-31

Calendar & Tasks
Add events by date with time parameters; set Reminder, add stamps and set other options.
P.11-2, **P.11-6**

Voice Recorder
Save short voice memos on handset or Memory Card; or long ones on Memory Card.
P.11-15

Barcodes/Text Scanner
Scan UPC/QR Codes and text or create QR Codes from Phone Book entries, etc.
P.11-17, **P.11-20**, **P.11-21**

Electronic Books
Purchase and then download E-Books to read on handset. Mark pages with bookmarks.
P.11-25

Vodafone live!
Send/receive SMS/MMS, browse the Mobile Internet for files/info or download V-applications via Web.
P.13-2

Optional Services

Call Forwarding
Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number.
P.12-2

Voice Mail
Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voice Mail; access messages from 804SH/touchtone landline.
P.12-3

Call Waiting
Reduce missed calls! Answer incoming calls even while the handset is already engaged.
P.12-5

Conference Call
Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for wireless teleconferencing.
P.12-5

Call Barring
Restrict all incoming/outgoing calls or apply restrictions by type of call/current location.
P.12-6

Caller ID
Set 804SH to show/hide your phone number for all outgoing calls or enter show/hide prefix.
P.12-9

USIM Card

General Information & Precautions

Vodafone Global Standard USIM Card is an IC Card containing customer information such as handset number. USIM Card must be inserted before using a USIM Card-compatible handset. Without USIM Card, some services (calls, messaging, Web, etc.) are not available.

- Save contacts on USIM Card Phone Book (see **P.4-3**).
- Insert into compatible Vodafone handsets to access files.
- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. Vodafone is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

IC Chip
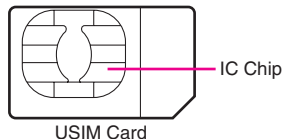
USIM Card

■**If Handset is Dropped or Subjected to Shocks**
804SH may not recognise USIM Card; it may shut down and remain off or automatically restart. This is not a malfunction. If *Insert USIM Card* appears or 804SH does not restart, clean and properly reinsert USIM Card then restart 804SH.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of Vodafone.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to Vodafone upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back-up USIM Card files. Vodafone is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Inserting & Removing USIM Card

Turn handset power off beforehand.

Inserting	**Removing**

Inserting

1 **Remove battery (see P.1-15)**
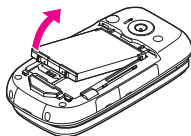
2 **Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down**
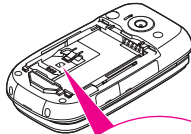
3 **Insert battery (Steps 3 - 4 "Inserting" on P.1-15)**
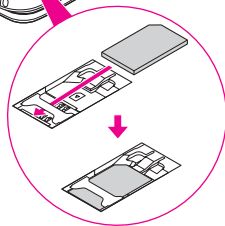
Removing

1 **Remove battery (see P.1-15)**
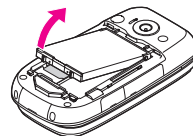
2 **Press Tab then push USIM Card as shown**

3 **Insert battery (Steps 3 - 4 "Inserting" on P.1-15)**

① ②

Tab
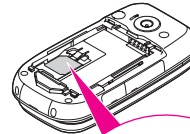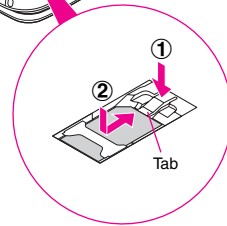
Note ▶ • Do not force USIM Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.
- Avoid touching USIM Card IC chip. May hinder performance (see **P.1-4**). Avoid touching USIM Card terminals as well.
- Replacing USIM Card with one containing different customer information, or turning on handset without USIM Card inserted deletes all downloaded Custom Screen Keys (see **P.10-5**); handset repairs may also delete Custom Screen Keys. If handset number is unchanged, however, previously downloaded Keys may be re-downloaded at no charge (transmission fees apply).

USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card: **PIN1** and **PIN2**.

PIN1

A 4-digit to 8-digit Security Code to prevent unauthorised use of Vodafone handset.

• Change PIN1 as needed (see **P.10-16** "Change PIN").
• When PIN Entry (see **P.10-16**) is *On*, PIN1 must be entered each time handset (with USIM Card inserted) is turned on.
• PIN1 is *9999* by default.

PIN2

Required to clear Call Costs (see **P.2-14**) and to set Max Cost (see **P.2-14**).

• Change PIN2 as needed (see **P.10-16** "Change PIN").
• PIN2 is *9999* by default.

PIN Lock & PUK Code

PIN1 Lock or **PIN2 Lock** is activated if PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively. Cancel PIN Lock (see **P.10-16**) by entering the Personal Unblocking Key (**PUK Code**). For information on PUK Code, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Note ▶ • If PUK Code is incorrectly entered ten times, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled. Write down PUK Code.
• For USIM Card unlocking procedures, call Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
• Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible when Switch On/Off in PIN Entry is *On*. For more, see **P.2-4** "Emergency Calls".

Handset Parts & Functions

Handset
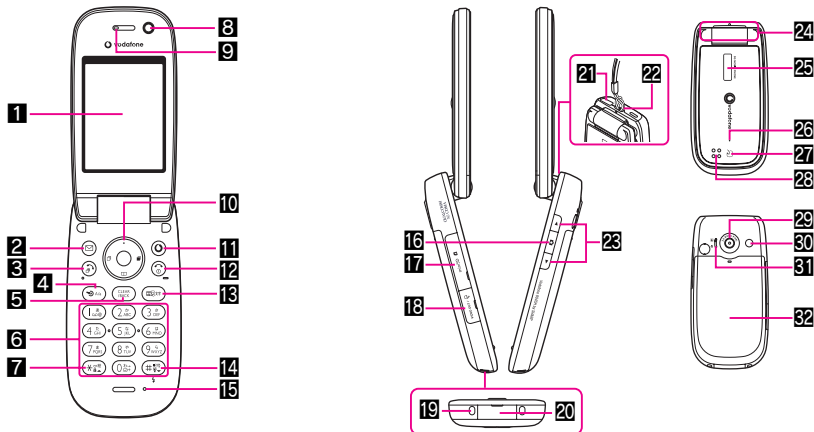
1 Display

2 Mail Key

Open Messaging menu or execute Soft Key functions (see **P.1-21**).

3 Start Key

Initiate/answer calls. Open records of All Calls.

4 Shortcuts & A/a Key

In Standby, open Shortcuts menu. In text entry windows, toggle upper/lower case roman letters or standard/small hiragana/katakana.

5 Clear/Back Key

Delete entries, escape/return to previous window.

6 Keypad

7 ⚹ & Keypad Lock Key

In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to toggle Keypad Lock. In text entry, open web/mail address prefixes & suffixes.

8 Internal Camera

Use during Video Call.

9 Earpiece

⏽ **Multi Selector**

Select menu items, move cursor and scroll, etc.

⏾ **Vodafone Web Key**

Open Vodafone Web Main Menu or execute Soft Key functions (see **P.1-21**).

⏿ **Power On/Off Key**

Press for 2+ seconds to turn handset power on/off.

⏤ **Multimedia/Text Key**

Start Media Player or toggle between character entry modes.

⏥ **# & Manner Key**

In text entry windows, toggle Symbol/Pictograph Lists.

Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner mode.

⏦ **Microphone**

⏧ **Shutter Key**

Open selected menu items or execute functions. In Standby (clamshell open), press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera.

⏨ **Memory Card Slot**

Insert Memory Card here.

⏩ **VIDEO OUT/Headphone/Optical Digital Line In Connector**

Connect supplied LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones, optional Video Cable, etc.

⏪ **Charger Terminal**

⏫ **External Device Connector**

Connect Charger here.

⏬ **Infrared Port**

Use for infrared data transmissions.

⏭ **Strap Eyelet**

Attach straps as shown.

⏮ **Zoom/Select Key**

Select menu items, move cursor, etc.

⏯ **Internal Antenna Location**

⏰ **External Display**

⏱ **Small Light**

Illuminates red while charging.

⏲ 🔊 **Logo**

Vodafone live! FeliCa contactless IC Card embedded.

Centre 🔊 logo side over reader/writer to use IC Card.

⏳ **Speaker**

⏴ **External Camera (lens cover)**

Capture still and video image.

⏵ **Mobile Light**

Flashes for calls/new mail; use as strobe/Pen Light.

⏶ **Portrait (📷)/Macro (🌷) Selector**

⏷ **Battery Cover**

Note ▶ Internal Antenna
- 804SH has no external antenna. Handset transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna.
- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.
- Voice quality varies with handset usage/location.
- Avoid attaching metallic straps. Antenna sensitivity will be affected.

Tip ▶ Descriptions on **P.1-7** - **1-8** are illustrative of general handset usage.

Display Indicators

Main Display Indicators

🔒📲⊠🅿🔋💻🔉🔔📶🎵📶

![display with indicators]

1 **2** **3** **4** **5** **6** **7** **8** **9** **10** **11**

📶📲🖋⊠📲🔋💻🎵📶🔇🔔🔋

12 **13** **14** **15**   **16** **17** **18** **19**
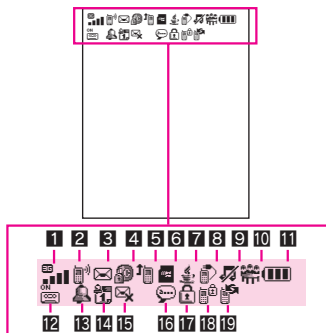
1 Network Service

📶: 3G, 📶: GSM

Signal Strength

📶: Strong, 📶: Moderate, 📶: Low, 📶: Weak,

OUT: Out-of-Range

2 📲: Incoming Voice Call, 📲: Voice Call in Progress,

📲: Video Call in Progress, ✈ : Offline Mode,

🔵: Packet Transmission Ready,

🔵: Packet Transmission in Progress

3 Mail

⊠: Unread Mail

📩: Handset Memory Low, 📩: USIM Card Memory Low,

📧: Handset & USIM Card Memories Low

📥: Receiving Mail, 📤: Sending Mail

4 IC Card Lock Active

5 ¹📞: Call Forwarding or Voice Mail Active

Appears when *Always* (forwarding condition) is set.

📞: Auto Delivery Info

6 Memory Card Status

📇: Inserted, 📇: In Use, 📇: Formatting, 📇: Unusable

7 ♣: Active V-application, ♣ (grey): Paused V-application,

🎵: Music Player Active, 🔒: SSL

8 External Transmission

📲: USB Transmission Ready

📲 (red): Infrared Connection in Progress

📲: Infrared Transmission in Progress

🔵*: Bluetooth Transmission Ready

Appears in grey when Visibility is set to *Hide My Phone*.

🔵: Bluetooth Transmission in Progress

🔵: Bluetooth Talk in Progress

9 Ringtone/Vibration

🔇: Silent, 🔊: Increasing Volume, 📳: Vibration Active,

📳: Silent & Vibration Active.

🔊: Loudspeaker Active

🎙: Microphone Muted

10 Mode

🔔: Meeting, 🏃: Activity, 🚗: Car, 🎧: Headset, 🔕: Manner

11 Battery Strength

Indicator may appear vertically (e.g. 🔋).

⓬ 🕮: **Answer Phone Active**

🕮: **Answer Phone Active & Message Recorded**

🕮: **Answer Phone Cancelled & Message Recorded**

⓭ **Alarm Set**

⓮ 🕮: **Schedule (Reminder Set)**

🕮: **Schedule (Reminder Unset)**

⓯ **Message Delivery Failure**

⓰ **New Voice Mail**

⓱ **Secret Mode Active**

⓲ 🕮: **Function Lock Active**

🕮: **Keypad Lock Active**

⓳ 🕮 **(grey): Infrared Transmission Ready**

External Display Indicators

Only major External Display Indicators are described below.

15:05	
1	2	3

1 📟/📟: **Battery Strength**

📟: **IC Card Lock Active**

2 Time

3 📶: **Signal Strength**
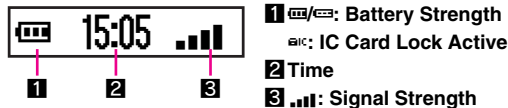
Incoming Communications

Indicator and number of calls/messages, etc. appear for unconfirmed incoming communications or Alarm.

Missed Calls	📵	Alarm	🔔
Answer Phone Message	🕮	Calendar (Reminder set)	🗓
New Messages	✉	Tasks (Reminder set)	🗒
Auto Delivery Info	📭	Message Delivery Failure	📭

Up to two indicators appear at the same time. Press ◀ or ▶ to view more.

Display Positions

Clamshell Closed

Handset is closed. Keep handset in this position when not in use.

Clamshell Open

Handset is open. Place or answer calls, enter text, etc.
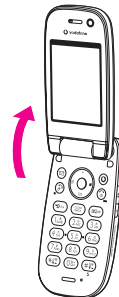
Battery & Charger

Getting Started

Charge battery before first use/after period of disuse.

Battery Life

- Do not use/store battery at extreme temperatures; this may shorten battery life. Ideally, use/store between 5°C and 35°C.
- Use specified Charger only; others may damage handset/ battery or overheat or ignite battery.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.

Charging

- Do not use Charger for other purposes.
- Contact with metal may short, overheat or burst battery.
- Small Light illuminates red while charging. (It may take longer for the light to illuminate when handset is off.)
- Charging takes approximately 140 minutes (with handset off).
  - **Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.**
- 804SH and Charger may warm during charging.
- Separate Charger from TV/radio if interference occurs.

Precautions

- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.
- Avoid:
  - Extreme temperatures
  - Humidity, dust and vibration
  - Direct sunlight
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

Tip ▶ • Battery must be inside handset to charge it.
- While charging battery with handset on, **▥** flashes until battery is fully charged.
- Battery will charge regardless of handset position.

Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)

Continuous Talk Time	2.5 hours in 3G/4 hours in GSM
Continuous Standby Time	370 hours
Continuous Operating Time	5.5 hours
Continuous Playback Time	10 hours
Continuous Video Call Time	90 minutes

Values calculated with Backlight Brightness set to *Level 4*.

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with clamshell closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).
- Continuous Operating Time is the length of time handset keys can be pressed continuously without calls.
- Continuous Playback Time is measured while music plays (Tone Control set to *Normal*) using LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones, Offline Mode cancelled, and clamshell closed.
- The above values (Battery Time) are nominal values, measured under stable signal conditions.

Battery Time

Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time:

- **Poor Usage Conditions**
  - Extreme temperatures (use within a range of 5°C to 35°C)
  - Impaired handset, battery or Charger terminals
  - Signal is weak/handset is out-of-range
- **Power Consuming Operations**
  - Activating/using V-applications
  - Repeated mobile camera use or barcode scanning
  - Frequent use of Mobile Light
  - Playing video images
  - Frequent use of Pen Light
  - Continuous Keypad use (Keeping backlights on for long periods)
  - Using Music Player/Voice Recorder
  - Frequent Bluetooth transmissions
  - Frequent infrared transfers
- **Power Consuming Settings**
  - Increasing Backlight Time Out/Display Saving time
  - Setting Backlight to illuminate brighter
  - Activating Bluetooth in Standby

Extend Battery Time

Select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time (see P.10-7) to extend Battery Time.

When Battery Runs Out

A message appears and short beeps sound.

Press ⊙ to stop short beeps.

(Short beeps do not sound in Manner mode.)

■During Voice Call

A double beep sounds every five seconds.

After 20 seconds, the call ends and handset shuts down.

■During Video Call

A message appears and call ends with a double beep, then short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

(Short beeps are muted in Manner mode.)

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a Vodafone shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Battery Strength

Strength Levels

External Display
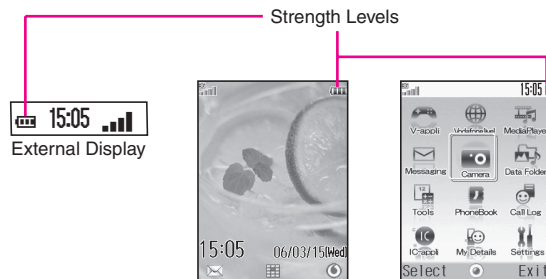
When battery runs out, *Recharge Battery* appears and short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

■**Indicator**

Battery Strength indicator varies as shown.
Charge or replace when level is low.

Recharge Battery appears.
Charge or replace battery immediately.

Battery Voltage

Minimum Operating
Voltage

(IIII)/	(III)/	(I)/	/()
Level 3	Level 2	Level 1	Level 0
Approx. 70%	Approx. 20%	Approx. 10%	

Hours of Use

Remaining Strength (at 25°C)
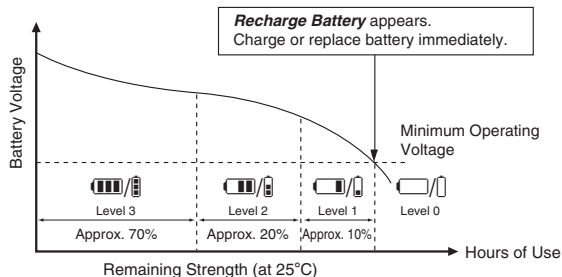
■**Battery Strength & Environment**

At low temperatures, battery is consumed faster.
At high temperatures, battery lasts longer.

Note ▶ • Battery Strength indicator is for reference only.
• At Level 1, some functions including Video Camera, Music Player and Voice Recorder do not operate (see **P.6-7**, **P.7-8**, **P.11-15**).

■ **Small Light & Battery Strength Indicator**

■**Handset Power On**

Small Light	Indicator (IIII/)	Conditions
Off	Flashes	Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C to 35°C, or battery has run out
Flashes red	Flashes	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Flashes	Charging
Off	Illuminates	Charging completed/Standby

■**Handset Power Off**

Small Light	Indicator (IIII/)	Conditions
Flashes red	Off	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Off	Charging
Off	Off	Charging completed

Installing & Removing Battery

Inserting

1 **Press down and slide cover as shown**

Battery Cover ①

②
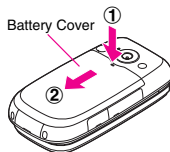
2 **Lift and remove cover as shown**
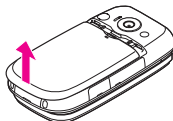
3 **Insert battery**
• With printed side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

②

①
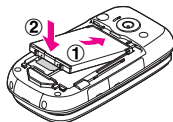
4 **Close cover**
• Position and slide the cover as shown until it stops.
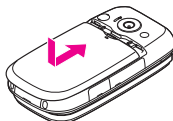
Removing

• Turn handset power off before removing battery.
• Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.

1 **Press down and slide cover as shown**

Battery Cover ①

②
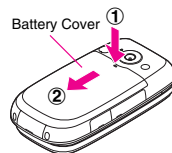
2 **Lift and remove cover as shown**
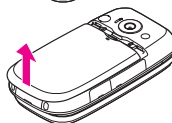
3 **Remove battery**
• Take hold of Battery Tab here and lift as shown.
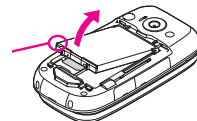
Tip ▶ This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.
• To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
• To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
  ■ Short-circuit battery   ■ Disassemble battery

Li-ion

AC Charger

AC 100V
Blades
AC Charger
Charger Connector
Release Tabs
Arrows Up
External Device Connector
Terminal Cover
Small Light
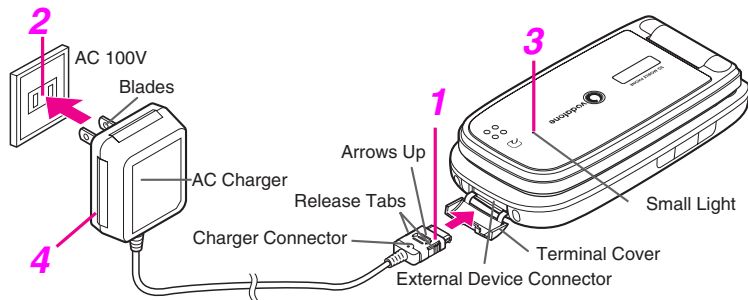
Use specified Charger only.

1 Open Terminal Cover to connect Charger

- Squeeze release tabs and insert connector fully.
- **Use slot to gently pull Terminal Cover down and out as shown.**

Slot
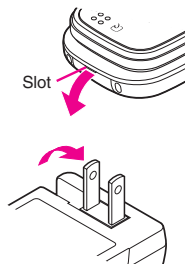
2 Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see **P.1-14**).
- **Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)**

3 Charging is complete when light goes out

- Charging takes approximately 140 minutes.

4 After Charging

Unplug Charger from AC outlet, then 804SH

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Terminal Cover to protect External Device Connector.

Note ▶ • Do not pull, bend or twist AC Charger cord.
- AC Charger is compatible with household currents between AC 100V and 240V.
- Vodafone is not liable for problems resulting from charging 804SH abroad.

Desktop Holder

Desktop Holder may be purchased separately.

Small Light

AC 100V

Release Tabs

Blades

AC Charger

Charger Connector

Arrows Down

Insert cord into the groove.

Connection Terminal
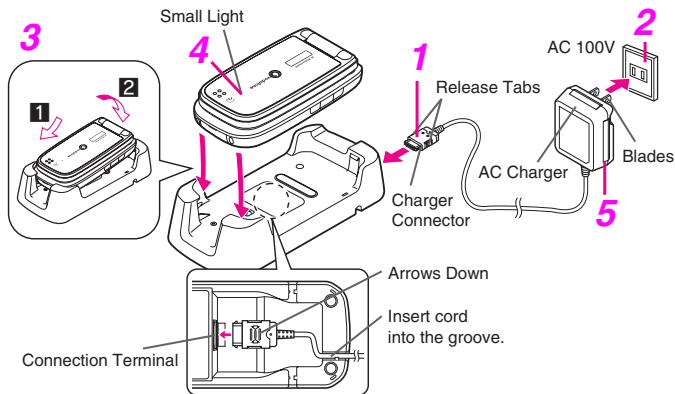
Use specified Charger only.

1 **Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder until it clicks**

- Connection Terminal is on the back of Desktop Holder.

2 **Plug Charger into AC outlet**

- **Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)**
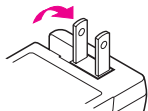
3 **Gently insert handset into Desktop Holder**

- Fit tabs into slots as shown in **1** and push handset as indicated in **2** until it clicks into place (resting flat).
- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see **P.1-14**).

4 **Charging is complete when light goes out**

- Charging takes approximately 140 minutes.

5 **After Charging**

Unplug Charger from outlet and remove handset

In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.

Cigarette Lighter Socket

2

3

5 Plug

In-Car Charger

Arrows Up

1

Release Tabs

Charger Connector

4

Small Light

Terminal Cover

External Device Connector
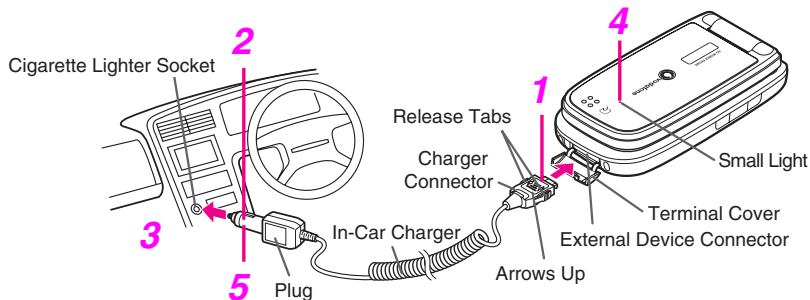
1 **Open Terminal Cover and insert Charger connector until it clicks (see P.1-16)**

2 **Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket**

3 **Start car engine**
• Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see **P.1-14**).

4 **Charging is complete when light goes out**
• Charging takes approximately 140 minutes.

Tip ▶ • For more information, see In-Car Charger manual.
• Use optional In-Car Holder to secure handset.

5 **After Charging**

Unplug Charger from cigarette lighter socket, then 804SH

• Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
• Replace Terminal Cover to protect External Device Connector.

Note ▶ • Use In-Car Charger only when vehicle has a negative earth.
• Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
• Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
• Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.

Handset Power On/Off
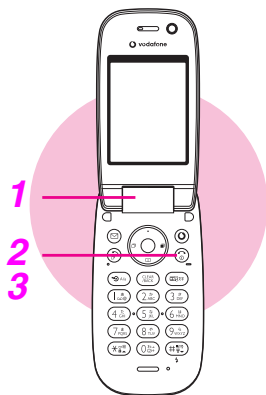
1 Open handset

2 Press 🔘 for 2+ seconds
- Backlight illuminates; after Power On Graphic, handset enters Standby.

3 Turning Off
Press 🔘 for 2+ seconds
After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Clock Settings & Re-Provisioning

■ If date and time have not been set, a confirmation appears after Power On Graphic.
Choose 🔲 Yes ➡ Use ⊙ to select your zone ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter date and time ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter last name ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter first name ➡ Press ●
- Save your zone if not preset (see **P.10-14** "Time Zone").

■ Handset initiates Re-Provisioning to update Network information when 🔲, ⊙ or ● is pressed for the first time; press 🔲 Yes.
- Perform Re-Provisioning to use Vodafone live! services.
- To update Network information manually, see **P.10-35** "Re-Provisioning".

My Details

■ To confirm handset phone number, press ●⓪ in Standby.
- To add, edit, delete or copy My Details, see **P.4-14**.

Note ▶
- USIM Card data is read after turning power on. Signal strength indicator may take some time to appear. It may take longer when turning power on for the first time.
- *Insert USIM Card* appears when USIM Card is not inserted. If it appears with USIM Card inserted, turn off handset power and check that the card is properly inserted and that the IC chip is clean, then restart handset.

Tip ▶ Display shuts down after a period of inactivity.

1
2
3

15:05   06/03/15[Wed]

Standby
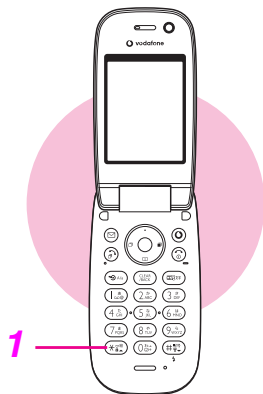
Keypad Lock

Use Keypad Lock to lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

Activating

1 **Press ✳ for 1+ seconds**

■ 🔒 appears and Keypad Lock is set.

Cancelling

1 **Press ✳ for 1+ seconds**

■ 🔒 disappears.

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Keypad Lock is active. For more, see **P.2-4** "Emergency Calls".

Tip ▶ **When Keypad Lock is Active**
- Incoming calls temporarily cancel Keypad Lock. To answer a call, press 📞. [Activate Any Key Answer (see **P.10-2**) to answer calls with other keys.]
  Keypad Lock reactivates after the call.
- Handset power does not turn off even if 📴 is pressed for 2+ seconds.

Pen Light

Use handset as a flashlight with clamshell closed.

1 **Press 📷 for 1+ seconds**

■ To change illumination colour, press ◀ or ▶ while on.

2 **Press 📷 to turn off**

Note ▶ Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.
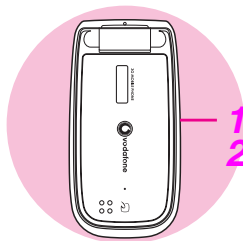
Handset Menus
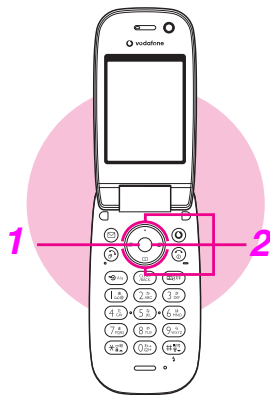
Main Menu

Access functions/operations from **Main Menu**.

1 Press ●

Main Menu opens.

■**Main Menu Items**

- Mail Messages
- V-applications
- Web
- Media Player
- Data Folder
- Mobile Camera
- Call Log
- Phone Book
- Settings
- My Details
- IC-appli
- Tools (Calendar, Alarm, World Clock, etc.)
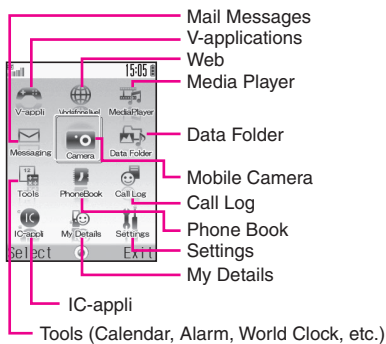
2 Use ⊙ to select an item and press ●

Sub Menu opens (see **P.18-2**).

■**Soft Keys**

Soft Key functions appear at the bottom of Display.
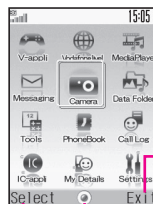
Press ◉ to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press ● to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press ◙ to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Return to Standby

■ Press ⊙ to return to Standby (see **P.1-19**) from function windows, menus, etc.
  • When a confirmation appears, choose ◙ **Yes**. Handset returns to Standby.
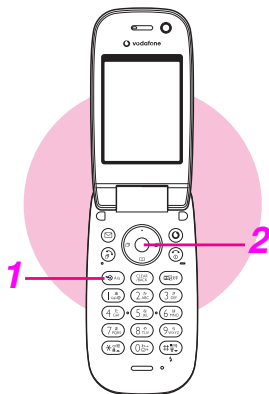
User Shortcuts

Using Shortcuts

Create shortcuts to functions and files.
Default Shortcuts:

- Calendar, Calculator, Alarms, Voice Recorder, Sounds & Alerts, Display, Play Ans. Phone, Bluetooth, V-appli, Data Folder, Videos and Expenses Memo

1 Press ⊛

Shortcuts list appears.

2 Select a function and press ●

Editing Shortcuts

Assign	Change default shortcuts

Press ⊛ ➜ **Select an item** ➜ **Press** ⊠ **Options** ➜ **Select** *Assign* ➜ **Press** ● ➜ **Select new item** ➜ **Press** ●

Move	Change the order of items

Press ⊛ ➜ **Select an item** ➜ **Press** ⊠ **Options** ➜ **Select** *Move* ➜ **Press** ● ➜ **Select target location with** ⟨⟩ ➜ **Press** ●

Set to Default	Restore default shortcuts

Press ⊛ ➜ **Press** ⊠ **Options** ➜ **Select** *Set to Default* ➜ **Press** ● ➜ **Press** ⊠ **Yes**

```
                              15:05
        Shortcuts
 Calendar
 Calculator
 Alarms
 Voice Recorder
 Sounds & Alerts
 Display
 Play Ans. Phone

Options    ◉    Exit
```

Quick Operations

In Standby, enter numbers to access functions quickly.

To activate functions, press the key next to the function.

Accessible functions vary by the number of digits entered.

Function \ Digits	1	2	3	4	5 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 32
Speed Dial (see **P.4-14**)	○[1]	✕	✕	✕	✕	✕	✕
Calculator (see **P.11-14**)	○	○	○	○	○	○	✕
Expenses Memo (see **P.11-24**)	○	○	○	○	○	✕	✕
Speed Mail (see **P.14-22**)	○[2]	✕	✕	✕	✕	✕	✕
Calendar (see **P.11-2**)	✕	✕	✕	○[3]	✕	✕	✕
Set Alarm (see **P.11-10**)	✕	✕	✕	○[4]	✕	✕	✕
Place International Calls[5] (see **P.2-4**)	✕	✕	✕	✕	○	○	○

[1]Except for *0*.

[2]Press 😊 **Mail** after entering a number. Save entries to Speed Mail List (see **P.14-22**) beforehand.

[3]Except for invalid numbers such as *0431* (there is no 31 April).

[4]Enter four digits for time (24-hour format) to set Alarm.

[5]*Call to Japan* appears when outside Japan.

■Example: Enter *1111* to use Calculator

1 **Press** (1)(1)(1)(1)

2 **Press** (○)

```
📶          15:05
    Enter Number
😊 :Call
😊 (long):Video Call
📷 :Calculator
📧 :Expenses Memo
📅 :Calendar
🔔 :Alarm

              1111
Options  ◎    Back
```
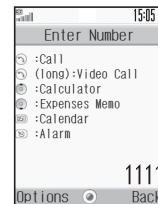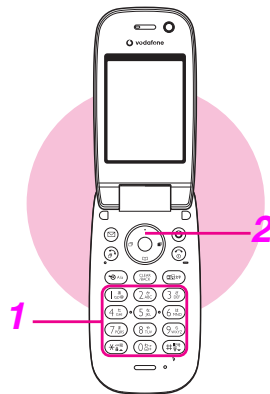
Security Codes

Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password are needed for handset use.

Handset Code

9999 or the 4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to use/change some handset functions.
• ✳ appears when Handset Code is entered.
• If incorrect, *Handset code is incorrect!* appears; re-enter code.
• Change Handset Code as needed (see **P.10-18**).

Centre Access Code

The 4-digit number in the contract; required to access Voice Mail via landlines or subscribe to fee-based information.
Do not attempt to change Centre Access Code. Contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**) for details.

Network Password

The 4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to restrict handset services (see **P.12-6**).
• If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
• Change Network Password as needed (see **P.12-9**).

Note ▶ • Write down Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password. If lost, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
• Do not reveal Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password. Vodafone is not liable for misuse or damages.

Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call

See **P.2-4** to initiate international calls from Japan, **P.2-16** for Voice Calls from outside Japan and **P.5-3** for Video Calls.
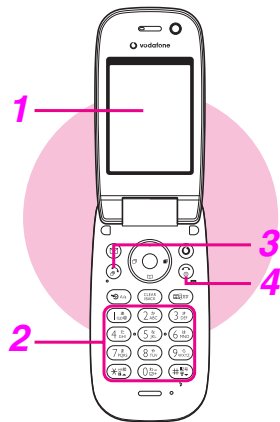
1 Confirm handset is on

- Check signal strength (see **P.1-9 ◼**).
- Handset will not transmit when ⚫, ⚫, ⚫ or ⚫ appears (see **P.18-4** - **18-6**).

2 Enter a phone number

```
                    15:05
     Enter Number
  :Call
  (long):Video Call
  :Calculator
  :Int'l Call




     090392XXXX1
Options        Back
```
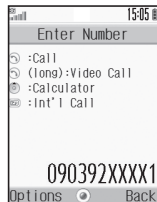
- Include dialling code for all numbers.
- ◼ To send/block Caller ID, enter a phone number and press ⊕ **Options** ➡ Select **Show My ID** or **Hide My ID** ➡ Press ●

3 Confirm the number and press ⓐ

Correcting Numbers

- Use ◉ to move cursor and press ⊞ to delete the digit above the cursor. Press ⊞ for 1+ seconds to delete the entire number and return to Standby.
- If you misdial, press ◉ to hang up and try again.

Busy Numbers

- Press ◉ to end the call and try again later.

4 Press ◉ to end call

- Alternatively, close handset.

Calling Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

- *Would you like to save this number to your Phone Book?* appears after calls.
  - ◼ To save, press ⊕ **Yes** ➡ Perform Step 4 on **P.4-7**
  - ◼ Press ◉ **No** to end without saving.
- To hide this confirmation, see **P.4-4** "Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers".

Note ▶ • Do not cover handset microphone (see **P.1-7 ◼**) while talking on the phone.
- Avoid covering area over Internal Antenna (see **P.1-7 ◼**).
- Voice quality is affected depending on how and where handset is used.

Tip ▶ • Check Call Timers (see **P.2-13**) and Call Costs (see **P.2-14**).
- For operations during a call, see **P.2-10** - **2-11**.

Redial

Place calls from Dialled Numbers. Up to 30 recently dialled numbers are saved.
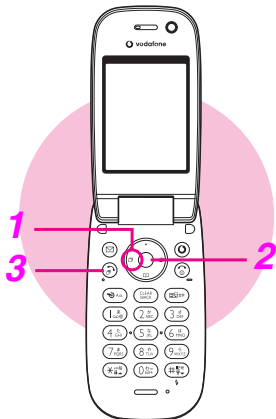
1 Press ⊙
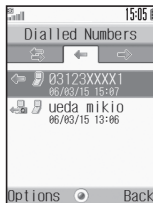
15:05

Dialled Numbers

⇐ 📲 03123XXXX1
06/03/15 15:07

📲 ueda mikio
06/03/15 13:06

Options ⬤ Back

Dialled numbers appear with date and time.
- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- Press ⓠ or ⓣ to see more.
- Use ⊕ to open Received Calls or All Calls.

2 Select a record and press ⬤

3 Press ⓐ

804SH dials the number.

■Indicators

| ⇐ | Dialled Voice Call | 📲 | Dialled Video Call |

Tip ▶ • When the same number is dialled more than once, only the last record appears.
- Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
- When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-12**.
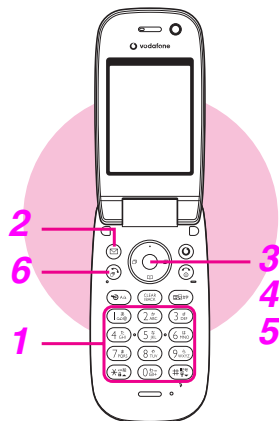
Placing an International Call

- See **P.2-16** to initiate Voice Calls from outside Japan.
- When calling Vodafone handsets, country code is not required.
- Service requires an additional contract. For details, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

1 Enter a phone number

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.

  ▢ To use Quick Operations, enter a phone number and press 📟 ➡ Select a country ➡ Press ● ➡ Skip ahead to Step 6

  ▢ To enter numbers directly, enter **0046010** (default international prefix) ➡ Enter country code ➡ Enter a phone number including the dialling code ➡ Skip ahead to Step 6

  ■ Omit the first **0** of the dialling code except when calling Italy (country code: 39) or Russia (country code: 7).

2 Press 📧 **Options**

3 Select *Int'l Call* and press ●

Country names appear.

4 Select a country and press ●

▢ To call unlisted countries, select *Enter Code* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ Press ●

5 Select *Japan* and press ●

6 Press 📞

Tip ▶ To save frequently used country codes, see **P.10-19** "Country Codes". For more information, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110, 119, 118, etc.) are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls	Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Max Cost (see P.2-14)	Possible	**Handset Lock (see P.10-17)**	Possible
Offline Mode (see P.2-19)	Not Possible	**PIN Entry (see P.1-6, P.10-16)**	Not Possible
Function Lock (see P.10-17)	Possible	**Outgoing Calls (see P.12-7)**	Possible
Keypad Lock (see P.1-20)	Possible		

Note ▶ Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan as handset operations are affected by wireless network/radio signals available in the country or handset settings.

Incoming Call

1 **When a call arrives, open handset**

```
▓ll·▓                    ▓
    Voice Call...

    Voice Call

   ┃ 090392XXXX2
Options  ●      Busy
```

- Number appears when Caller ID is sent.
- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
  ▌ Answering a Video Call: see **P.5-3**

2 **Press** ⟨⟩

▌ Handling Incoming Calls: see **P.2-7**

3 **Press** ⟨⟩ **to end call**

- Alternatively, close handset.
  Calls from Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book
- *Would you like to save this number to your Phone Book?* appears after calls.
  - To save, press ⟨⟩ **Yes** ➡ Perform Step 4 on **P.4-7**
  - Press ⟨⟩ **No** to end without saving.
- To hide this confirmation, see **P.4-4** "Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers".

Tip ▶ • When Any Key Answer (see **P.10-2**) is active, press any of the following keys to answer calls:
⟨0⟩ - ⟨9⟩, ⟨*⟩, ⟨#⟩, ⟨⟩, ⟨⟩, ⟨⟩

- When Caller ID is not sent, *Unset ID* appears instead of the phone number.
- Up to 30 received call records are saved (see **P.2-12**).
- Use Quick Recorder (see **P.2-9**) to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive.
- Change Ringtone volumes/patterns, Mobile Light colours, etc. (see **P.10-10** - **10-12**).
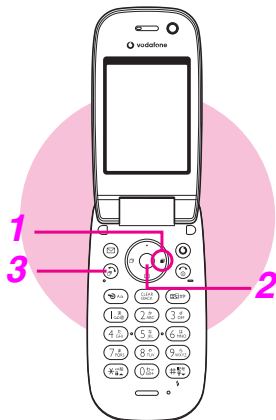
Calling from Received Calls

Up to 30 received calls are saved. When Caller ID is sent, numbers appear. Place calls directly to those numbers.

1 **Press ◉**

```
📶           15:05
Received Calls
  📞   ↩   ⇒
⇒ 📱 ueda mikio
      06/03/15 13:07




Options  ●     Back
```

Received numbers appear with date and time.

- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- Press ⓠ or ⓢ to see more.
- Use ⊙ to open Received Calls or All Calls.

2 **Select a record and press ◉**

3 **Press ⓓ**

804SH dials the number.

■**Indicators**

⇒	Answered Voice Call	🎞	Answered Video Call
↩	Missed Voice Call	🎞	Missed Video Call
⤵	Rejected Voice Call	🎞	Rejected Video Call

Tip ▶ • Names in Secret Mode entries appear only in Secret Mode.
- Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
- When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-12**.

Handling Incoming Calls
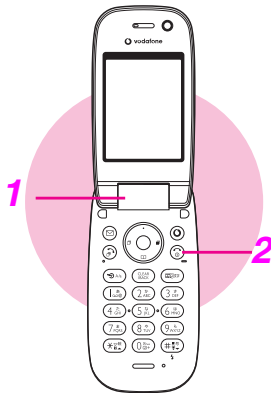
Rejecting a Call

Calls are rejected and saved in Received Calls.

1 **When a call arrives, open handset**

2 **While handset is ringing/vibrating, press �',' for 1+ seconds**

Redirecting a Call
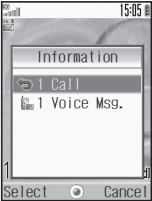
■**Call Forwarding: see P.12-2**
Direct incoming calls to a specified number by pressing 🔘 **Busy**.

■**Voice Mail: see P.12-3**
Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Centre.

■**Answer Phone: see P.2-8**
Record caller messages on handset.
Use Quick Recorder (see **P.2-9**) to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive.

Information

■ Information window opens for Missed Calls or Answer Phone messages.
- Select **Call** and press ⬤ to see details (see **P.2-12**).
- Select **Voice Msg.** and press ⬤ to play recorded messages (see **P.2-9**).

```
                              15:05
          ┌──────────────────┐
          │   Information     │
          │ ☺ 1 Call          │
          │ ▓ 1 Voice Msg.    │
          │                   │
          │1                  │
          └──────────────────┘
          Select   ○   Cancel
```

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset.

- Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Offline Mode. Use Voice Mail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available (see **P.12-3**).
- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Answer Phone and Voice Memo (see **P.2-11**).
- Answer Phone is inactive by default.

Activating & Deactivating

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Answer Phone*

1 Select *Settings* and press ●

2 Select *Switch On/Off* and press ●

■ To sample outgoing message, select *Guidance Message* ➡ Press ●
■ Press ◉ Back to stop.

3 *Activating*

1 Choose *On* and press ●

- Press ◉ to return to Standby (📧 appears). (📧 appears when messages are recorded.)

Deactivating

1 Choose *Off* and press ●

When Answer Phone is Active

■ For incoming calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts.
- Recording continues even if handset is closed.
- To answer calls, press ◌ during recording (no message will be recorded).
- When recording ends, 📧 appears.

■ If recording capacity becomes full (see below) after the recording, Answer Phone is deactivated and 📧 appears.

Note ▶ • When less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, Answer Phone is disabled. Delete messages to activate Answer Phone.
- Answer Phone is not available for incoming Video Calls.
- In Manner mode, Manner settings take priority over (see **P.10-2** "Mode Settings").

Playing Messages

1 Select *Play Ans. Phone* and press ●

Number of recordings appears and playback starts from the most recent message. After all messages have played, playback ends automatically.

■ Press ⊙ **Back** to stop playback.
■ To skip a message, press ⊙ during playback.
■ To play the previous message, press ⊙ twice during playback.
■ To delete a message, press ⊙ **Options** during playback ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ **Yes**

Tip ▶ **Incoming Calls**
Message playback stops for incoming calls. Press ⊙ to answer the call.

Earpiece Volume

■ Follow these steps to activate or mute Earpiece for outgoing message/caller message recordings.

Press ● ➡ Select *Tools* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Answer Phone* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Volume* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Link to Profile* or *Silent* ➡ Press ●

• For *Link to Profile*, current Earpiece volume applies.

Answer Time

■ Adjust ring time between 0 and 59 seconds (Answer Phone waits to answer calls).

Press ● ➡ Select *Tools* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Answer Phone* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Answer Time* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter time (00 - 59) ➡ Press ●

■ To start recording immediately after a call arrives, enter *00* ➡ Press ●

• Answer Time is *09 seconds* by default.

■ When Answer Phone and Voice Mail or Call Forwarding are both active, the function with the shortest ring time takes priority.

Example:

Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

Ring time for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding: 10 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

• If Answer Phone is full or handset is in Offline Mode or out-of-range, incoming calls are handled by Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.

Quick Recorder

■ Use Quick Recorder to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive. When a call arrives, follow these steps. Outgoing message plays and caller's message is recorded.

Press ⊙ **Options ➡ Select *Recording* ➡ Press ●**

Engaged Call Operations

Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels).

- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.
- Earpiece volume is *Level 3* by default.

1 During a call, press ◄ or ►

2 Press ◄ (up) or ► (down) to adjust volume

Voice Output

| **Loudspeaker** | Use Loudspeaker for handsfree conversations |

During a call, press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Loudspeaker On* ➡ Press ●
  ■ To cancel, press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Loudspeaker Off* ➡ Press ●

| **Mute** | Mute your handset microphone
Other party's voice can be heard |

During a call, press ⊙ Mute.
  ■ To cancel, press ⊙ Unmute.

| **Hold** | Hold tone sounds and each other's voice is not heard |

During a call, press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Hold* ➡ Press ●
  ■ To cancel, press ⊙ Retrieve.
- Subscription to **Call Waiting** or **Conference Call** (see **P.12-5**) is required.

Touch Tones

■ Use Touch Tones to send alphanumeric messages to pagers or operate a home answerphone remotely.
- Use *0* - *9*, ✳ and *#* to send Touch Tones.
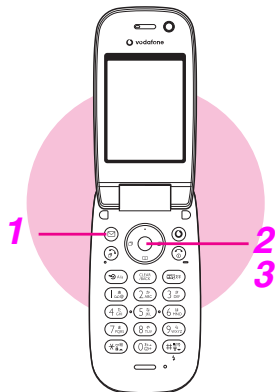
Voice Memo

1 **During a call, press ⊙ Options**

2 **Select *Record* and press ●**
Recording starts.

3 **Press ● to stop**
- Alternatively, end call to stop. (Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.)

| **Play** | Play Voice Memos |

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Answer Phone*

Select *Play Ans. Phone* ▶ Press ●
For details, see **P.2-9** "Playing Messages".

Other Engaged Call Operations

| **Phone Book List** | Open/save Phone Book entries or check My Details |

During a call, press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Phone Book List* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an entry (or My Details) ➡ Press ●
To save entries, press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Phone Book List* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Add New Entry* ➡ Press ● ➡ Perform from Step 2 on **P.4-4**

| **Messaging** | Create a new message or check received/sent/draft messages |

During a call, press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Messaging* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ●
To create a message, select *Create Message* ➡ Press ● ➡ Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**

| **Dial New Number** | Call another number |

During a call, press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Dial New Number* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter a phone number ➡ Press ⊙

| **Enable/Disable DTMF** | Select whether to send Touch Tones during a call |

During a call, press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Disable DTMF* or *Enable DTMF* ➡ Press ●

Tip ▶ To switch sound output between handset and handsfree devices during a call, see **P.10-26** "Connecting Handsfree Devices".

Call History
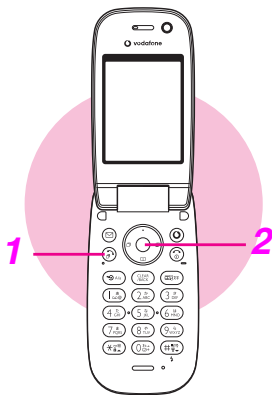
Open the following records:

All Calls	All dialled/received calls
Dialled Numbers	All dialled calls
Received Calls	All received calls

1 **Press** 🕐
All Calls opens.
■ Press ⟨⟩ to open others.

2 **Select a record and press** ●
Record details appear.

Tip ▶ Press 🕐 to open All Calls during a call.

Delete	Delete records one at a time

Press 🕐 ➡ **Select a record** ➡ **Press** ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Delete* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Press** ☺ **Yes**

Delete All	Delete all records

Press 🕐 ➡ **Open All Calls, Dialled Numbers or Received Calls** ➡ **Press** ☺ **Options** ➡
Select *Delete All* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Press** ☺ **Yes**

Tip ▶ To save phone numbers to Phone Book, see **P.4-7** "Saving from Dialled Numbers/Received Calls".

Using Call History

Call	Place calls

Press 🕐 ➡ **Select a record** ➡ **Press** ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Call* **or** *Video Call* ➡ **Press** ●
■ To edit numbers before dialling, select a record and press ☺ **Options** ➡ Select *Edit Before Call* ➡
Press ● ➡ Edit number ➡ Press 🕐 (Long Press for Video Calls)

Create Message	Create messages

Press 🕐 ➡ **Select a record** ➡ **Press** ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Create Message* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Perform from Step 5 on P.14-7

Call Timers/Data Counter
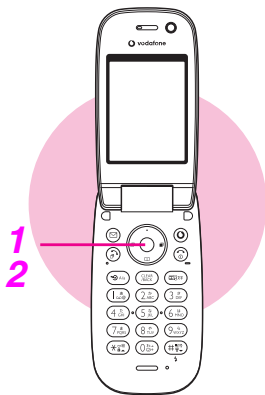
Call Timers

Check estimated time of the most recent call (Last Call Time) and all calls made since Clear Timers was last applied (All Calls Time). Times for Dialled Calls and Received Calls appear separately.

Main Menu ▶ *Call Log* ➡ *Call Timers*

1 **Select *Received Calls* or *Dialled Calls* and press ●**

2 **Press ● to return to Call Timers menu**
• Press ☎ to return to Standby.

Tip ▶ • Last Call Time and All Calls Time remain even after handset power is turned off.
• Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. On hold time is counted.

Clear Timers   Reset Call Timers

Main Menu ▶ *Call Log* ➡ *Call Timers*

Select *Clear Timers* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ✉ ▐Yes▌

Data Counter

Check estimated volume of the most recent or all packet transmissions (sent, received and total). Charges do not appear.

Main Menu ▶ *Call Log* ➡ *Data Counter*

1 **Select *Last Data* or *All Data* and press ●**

2 **Press ● to return to Data Counter menu**
• Press ☎ to return to Standby.

Clear Counter   Reset Data Counter

Main Menu ▶ *Call Log* ➡ *Data Counter*

Select *Clear Counter* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ✉ ▐Yes▌

Call Costs

Check estimated call charge of the most recent call or all calls.

Main Menu	▶ *Call Log* ▶ *Call Costs*

1 **Select *Last Call* or *All Calls* and press ●**

2 **Press ● to return to Call Costs menu**
- Press 🔚 to return to Standby.

Tip ▶ • Call Costs remain even after handset power is turned off.
- Sum of charges appears for Conference Call (Optional Service).

Clear Costs	Reset Call Casts

Main Menu	▶ *Call Log* ▶ *Call Costs*

Select *Clear Costs* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ✉ Yes

Cost Units	Set currency and conversion rate (per yen) to show converted amount in Call Costs

Default YEN 1

Main Menu	▶ *Call Log* ▶ *Call Costs* ▶ *Cost Units*

Select *Set Units* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter currency ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter conversion rate ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●
☐ To check current cost unit, select *Read Units* ▶ Press ●

Limit Call Costs

Max Cost	Set a limit of total call charges When the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked

Main Menu	▶ *Call Log* ▶ *Call Costs*

Select *Max Cost* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *Set Limit* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter the amount ▶ Press ●
☐ To check the set limit, select *Max Cost* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *Read Limit* ▶ Press ●
☐ To check the remaining amount, select *Residual Credit* ▶ Press ●

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when the limit is reached. For more, see **P.2-4** "Emergency Calls".

Outside Japan (International Roaming)
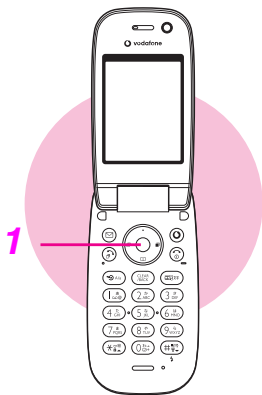
Switching Network Services

3G	Use in Japan or in 3G service areas abroad
GSM	Use in GSM service areas outside Japan
Auto	3G and GSM switch automatically by location (network status)

- *3G* is set by default.
- Outside Japan, set to *Auto* whenever possible.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Network Settings (⊙)* ➡ *Select Service*

1 **Select *3G*, *GSM* or *Auto* and press ⊙**

Selected service is activated.

Note ▶ • For information on international roaming (service areas, charges, available functions, restrictions, etc.), contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
• A separate contract is required for international roaming.
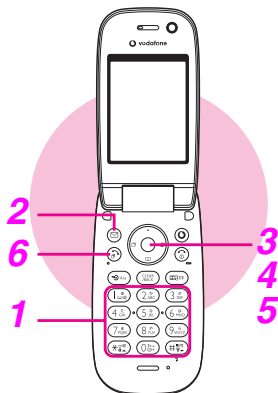
Calling from Outside Japan

1 Enter a phone number

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.
- When calling landlines or mobile phones within the county, skip ahead to Step 6.
  - ▢ To call Japan with Quick Operation, enter a phone number and press ⌨ ➡ Skip ahead to Step 6
  - ▢ To enter numbers directly, press ⓪ for 1+ seconds (+ appears) ➡ Enter a country code ➡ Enter a phone number (omit the first *0*) ➡ Skip ahead to Step 6
    - Omit the first *0* of the dialling code except when calling Italy (country code: 39) or Russia (country code: 7).

2 Press ✉ Options

3 Select *Int'l Call* and press ⦿

Country names appear.
- ▢ To call Japan, select *Call to Japan* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Skip ahead to Step 6

4 Select a country and press ⦿

- ▢ To call unlisted countries, select *Enter Code* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter country code ➡ Press ⦿

Calling Vodafone Handsets
- Always select **日本 (JPN)** (or press ⑧①) for direct entry).

5 Select *Abroad* and press ⦿

- + and country code are inserted before the phone number. The first *0* is omitted except when calling Italy (39) or Russia (7). (+ indicates international calls.)

6 Press ✆

Note ▶ In some areas, other parties may not be able to hear you and vice versa after returning to calls on hold (see **P.2-10**).

Tip ▶ **Adding Country Codes**
To save frequently used country codes, see **P.10-19** "Country Codes". For more information, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
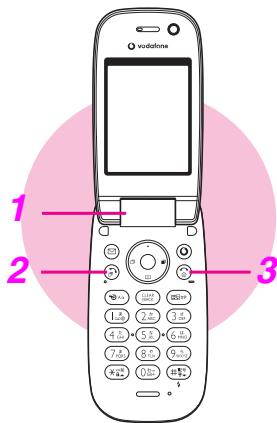
Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

• Turn it off in theatres, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
• Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, lifts, etc.
• Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
• Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner-Related Features

■Manner Mode: see P.2-18
Press Manner Key to automatically mute all Ringtones and activate Vibration mode for incoming calls, mail, etc.

■Vibration Mode: see P.10-11
Activate Vibration mode to use handset vibration to alert you to incoming calls, mail, etc. in public places.

■Volume Settings (see P.10-10)
Decrease or mute Ringtone volume for incoming calls, mail, etc. as well as tones for Web or V-applications when carrying handset in public places.

■Offline Mode: see P.2-19
Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. In Offline Mode, incoming/outgoing calls and Vodafone live! transmissions are blocked.

■Answer Phone: see P.2-8
Use Answer Phone to handle incoming calls when it is inappropriate or unsafe to answer.
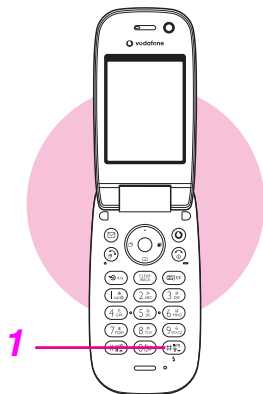
Activating & Cancelling

Activating

1 **Press #️ for 1+ seconds**

🏆 appears and Manner mode is set.

- 📧 (Answer Phone), 📳 (Vibration), 🔇 (Silent) and 🔊 (Increasing Volume) appear as set in Manner settings (see **P.10-2** "Mode Settings").

Cancelling

1 **Press #️ for 1+ seconds**

🏆 disappears and Manner mode is cancelled.

When Manner Mode is Active

■ Keypad Tones, Power On/Off and error tones are muted. Beeps for Switch Line (see **P.12-5** - **12-6**) are heard.
- Even in Manner mode, Ringtone can be heard through LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones. Volume is fixed to *Level 1*.

■ Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound even in Manner mode.

■ A confirmation for sound output appears when starting Media Player (see **P.7-2**).

■ Settings for Manner mode (see **P.10-2** "Mode Settings") are applied to Answer Phone, Ringtones, Vibration, Mobile Light, etc.

Tip ▶ • When Answer Phone is recording messages, the other party's voice is heard through Earpiece.
- To change Manner settings, see **P.10-2** "Mode Settings".
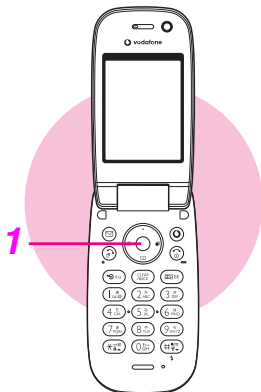
Activating/Cancelling Offline Mode

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions.
- In Offline Mode, incoming/outgoing calls and Vodafone live! transmissions are blocked.
- Offline Mode is *Off* by default.

Activating

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Network Settings (⊙)* ➡ *Offline Mode*

1 **Choose *On* and press ●**

📵 appears and Offline Mode is set.

Cancelling

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Network Settings (⊙)* ➡ *Offline Mode*

1 **Choose *Off* and press ●**

📵 disappears and Offline Mode is cancelled.

Tip ▶ • When Offline Mode is set while a Network V-application (see **P.16-2**) is paused, confirmation appears. Press ⊜ ▉Yes▉ to enter Offline Mode. (Network connection is disabled until Offline Mode is cancelled.)
  • Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible in Offline Mode. For more, see **P.2-4**.

LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones

Initiating Calls

Use Call Button (/) on LCD Remote/Mic with
Headphones to call the number saved in Speed Dial 2
(see **P.4-13**).

1 **Plug LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones into
handset**

LCD
Remote/Mic
with Headphones

Headphone
Connector

②

Microphone

Plug

①
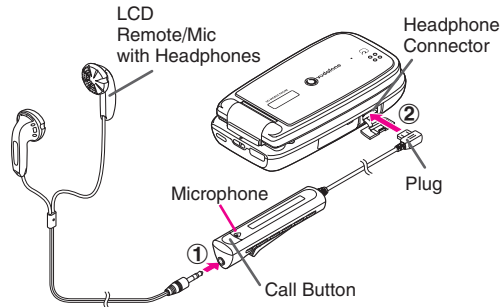
Call Button

2 **Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a double
beep sounds**
• 804SH dials the number.

3 **Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep
sounds**
Call ends.
• Alternatively, press to end call.

Note • Do not wrap cord around handset or Internal Antenna
Location. Electronic noise from cord may cause
malfunction or interference.
• Plug in firmly. If not, sounds may not be heard.
• Cancel Function Lock, Phone Book Lock (see **P.10-17**)
and Keypad Lock (see **P.1-20**) to place calls.
• If Speed Dial 2 is a Secret Mode entry, activate Secret
Mode (see **P.10-18**) to call the number.

Answering Calls

1 **Plug LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones into
handset**

Ringtone sounds from Headphones and handset speaker.

2 **Press Call Button for 1+ seconds to answer a call**

3 **Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep
sounds**

Call ends.
• Alternatively, press to end call.

Entering Characters

Character Selection

Use Kana and Pager (see **P.3-8**) to enter alphanumerics,
Symbols, hiragana, kanji, katakana and Pictographs.
Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described
for use in text entry windows using Kana Mode.

Entry Modes

Press 🔤 to toggle between character entry modes as follows:
a → 1 → 区 → 漢 → ア → ｱ → a → a

Current Entry Mode
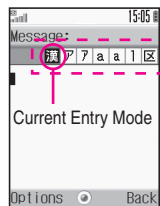
Available Modes

漢	Kanji (hiragana)
ア	Double-byte katakana
ｱ	Single-byte katakana
A	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
a	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
A	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
a	Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
1	Single-byte number
区	Character Code

- Alternatively, use 🔘 to toggle between entry modes after pressing 🔤 once.
- Ａ and Ａ appear in upper/lower case mode (see right).

Upper & Lower Case

■ In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press 🔘 to toggle between upper/lower case and lower case modes. In Pager Mode (see **P.3-8**), while selecting double or single-byte entry mode, press 🔘 to toggle between upper and lower case modes.
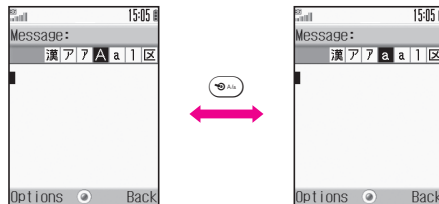
Double-byte Alphanumerics
(Upper/Lower Case)

Double-byte Alphanumerics
(Lower Case)

Tip ▶ • Handset Character Codes correspond to 6,355 kanji.
• Some characters are not available for mail addresses, etc.

Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

Example: In katakana entry, press ⓵ three times for ウ.

When entering characters, press ⓢ to toggle options in reverse. (Not available for single-byte numbers or Character Codes.)

Example: Enter い, then press ⓢ to return to あ.

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
⓵	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ	@. ／＿—1□ (space)	1	1
②	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	A B C a b c 2	2	2
③	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	3	3
④	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	G H I g h i 4	4	4
⑤	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	5	5
⑥	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o 6	6	6
⑦	まみむめも	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	7	7
⑧	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	T U V t u v 8	8	8
⑨	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	9	9
⓪	わをんー、。 ↵ (Line Break)	ワヲンー、。 ↵ (Line Break)	, . 0 ↵ (Line Break)	0 +[1]	0
ⓧ	Log List, Pictograph List, Double-Byte Symbol List	゛ ゜ -[2]	Single-byte Mail/Web Extensions[3]	＊ P (Pause) ? -[4]	———
ⓟ	Log List, Double-byte Symbol[5] List, Pictograph List			#[6], Log List, Single-byte Symbol List, Pictograph List	———
ⓢ	Conversion (Up)[7]	Cursor Up			

[1]Press ⓪ for 1+ seconds to enter + (available for phone number entry).

[2]- is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

[3]Extensions are listed for easy entry.

[4]P (Pause), ? and - are for phone number entry.

[5]Single-byte in single-byte katakana/alphanumeric entry.

[6]# is for phone number entry.

[7]Cursor moves up except during conversion.

■**Key Assignments (Continued)**

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
ⓠ	Conversion (Down)[8]	Cursor Down ↵ (Line Break)			
ⓞ	Cursor Left				
ⓡ	Cursor Right				
🖉	Change Entry Mode				
🔤	Toggle Case (for some characters)		Toggle Case + Toggle Mode (upper/lower and lower case)	——	——
🗑 Press	Delete One Character, Cancel Conversion	Delete One Character			Delete Code/One Character
🗑 Long Press	Delete before or after cursor				
ⓣ	Recover up to 64 deleted characters[9]				
●	OK				
✉	Phonetic Conversion	——			——
ⓞ	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics Conversion	——			——

[8]Cursor moves down except during conversion.

[9]Press ⓣ once for each character to recover immediately after deleting. (Not available after deleting text with 🗑 (Long Press).)

Entering Characters

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Following the example below, enter **鈴木** to learn how to enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

1 Press (3.5) three times

Word suggestions change as hiragana are entered.

```
📶         15:05
Message:
  0(30KB)        漢
す
89すぐに
88すぐ
87する
86スケジュール
85すべて
Kanji    ◎    kana
```
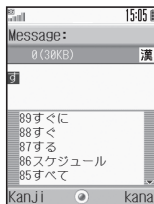
2 Press ⊙

- When the next character is on the same key, press ⊙ first.

```
📶         15:05
Message:
  0(30KB)        漢
す
89すぐに
88すぐ
87する
86スケジュール
85すべて
Kanji    ◎    kana
```

3 Press (3.5) three times and press (✳)

```
📶         15:05
Message:
  0(30KB)        漢
すず
67涼しい
66鈴
65鈴鹿
64鈴木
63珠洲
Kanji    ◎    kana
```
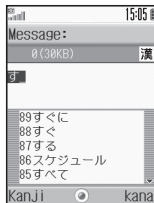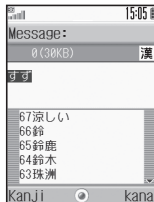
4 Press (2.5) twice

- To enter unconverted hiragana, skip ahead to Step 6.

```
📶         15:05
Message:
  0(30KB)        漢
すずき
08鈴木
07スズキ
06鱸
05鈴木京香
04鈴木田
Kanji    ◎    kana
```

5 Press ⓠ (convert) and use ⓢ to select a word

- The most recent selection appears first in the list.
  ■ To see other suggestions, press ✉ **Back** or ⓞ **Next**.
  ■ To exit the list, press (CLEAR/BACK).
  ■ To change segment, see **P.3-6** "Segmenting Phrases".

```
📶         15:05
Message:
  0(30KB)        漢
鈴木
08鈴木
07スズキ
06鱸
05鈴木京香
04鈴木田
Back    ◎    Next
```

6 Press ●

```
📶         15:05
Message:
  2(29KB)        漢
鈴木
21さん
20くん
19ちゃん
18君
17様
Options  ◎    Back
```
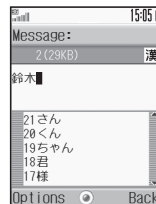
Katakana Entry

■ Switch to double or single katakana mode to enter katakana. Alternatively, enter hiragana and then select katakana from the word suggestion list.

■ To convert hiragana to katakana/alphanumerics only, see **P.3-10** "Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion".

Predictive & Previous Usage

■ Use these functions to convert hiragana to kanji more quickly.

| **Predictive** | Word suggestions change as up to 5 hiragana are entered |
| **Previous Usage** | Suggests words/characters likely to follow entry based on previous entries |

- Both functions are active by default (see **P.3-12** "Optional Predictive Functions").
- To lower priority of particular types of words (names of people, places, etc.) in the word suggestion list, see **P.3-12** "Set Low Priority".

User Dictionary

■ Save frequently used words/phrases to select from the word suggestion list (see **P.10-15**).

■ Segmenting Phrases

If the word is not listed, press ⌫ after Step 5 on **P.3-5** to exit. Use ⊙ to segment hiragana to convert separately.
Example: Segment みち into み and ち.

みち ➡ みち ➡ 三ち ➡ 三智▌
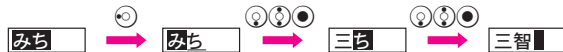
■ Selecting Multiple Converted Words

Press 📶✴

Example: To enter 西山大輔

にしやまだいすけ ➡ 西山大輔 ➡ 西山大輔▌

Small Kana (っ, ッ, etc.)

Enter small hiragana あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, ゆ and よ as well as small katakana.

1 Enter a character and press 📶Aあ

ツ
⬇ 📶Aあ
ッ
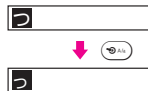
Adding ゛ or ゜

1 Enter a character and press ✳🔅
- In kanji (hiragana)/double-byte katakana entry, press the key once to add ゛ to か (Ka) row, さ (Sa) row and た (Ta) row characters, and press twice to remove. For は (Ha) row characters, press once to add ゛, twice to add ゜ and three times to remove.

は
⬇ ✳🔅
ば
⬇ ✳🔅
ぱ
⬇ ✳🔅
は
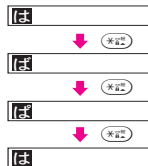
Tip ▶ In Single-byte Katakana Entry
- Press ✳🔅 once to add single-byte ゛ or twice for ゜.
- Press ⌫ to remove ゛ or ゜.

Space

1 Press ⊙
- Alternatively, in alphanumeric entry, press 1 seven times for space.

Ueda
⬇ ⊙
Ueda ▌
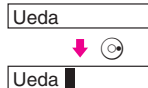
Line Break

Insert line breaks in text, Text Templates, etc.

1 Press ② at the end of text

- To insert line breaks in text, press ⓪ until ↵ appears. In kanji (hiragana) entry mode, then press ●. Keystroke count varies by character entry mode (see **P.3-3**).

```
Contact me at ▌
      ↓ ②
Contact me at ↵
▌
```
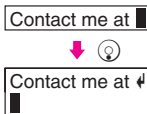
Entering Alphanumerics

Enter alphanumerics in double or single-byte alphanumerics mode. Alternatively, enter numbers in single-byte number mode.

```
         (3≊)
 a     ➡    ad
```

- When the next character is on the same key (example: entering *a* then *b*), press ⊙ first to move cursor.
- In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press ⊛ to toggle between upper/lower and lower case modes.
- To convert hiragana to katakana/alphanumerics only, see **P.3-10** "Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion".

Symbols, Pictographs & Emoticons

Symbols & Pictographs

1 Press ⌗ to open Log List (Log List is available in some entry modes; see P.3-3)

Recently used Symbols/Pictographs appear.

- Alternatively, in kanji (hiragana) mode, press ⁂ to open Log List.
- ─ appears by default or when Log List is deleted (see right).

2 Use ✧ to select one and press ●

- Repeat Step 2 to enter more.
  ▢ To see more lists, press ⊚ or ⌗. The list toggles as follows: Log List → Symbol List(s) → Pictograph Lists.
  ■ Press ⁂ to toggle the list in reverse order.
  ■ Press ② to scroll down.

3 Press ⊙ Exit to exit list

Tip ▶
- Symbols are double or single-byte according to the character type. (Pictographs are all double-byte.)
- Single-byte Symbols do not appear in Log List.
- Alternatively, enter **きごう** and press ② (convert). Some Symbols can be selected.
- For available Pictographs, see **P.18-15**.
- Enter a descriptive word such as **ハート** or **はな** and press ② (convert). Corresponding Pictographs can be selected.

Deleting Log List

▢ **In a text entry window, press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Input/Conversion* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Clear Symbols* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊚ Yes**
 ■ Press ⊙ Back twice to return to the text entry window.

Emoticons

1 **Press ⊠ Options**

2 **Select *Emoticons* and press ⏺**
- Enter two digits (01 - 50) to jump to the emoticon assigned to the number.

3 **Select an emoticon and press ⏺**

Tip ▶ • For other emoticons, enter *かお* and press ⓠ (convert). Alternatively, enter a descriptive word such as *わーい* or *うーん* and press ⓠ (convert). Corresponding emoticons can be selected.
- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as *嬉しい* or *悲しい*, corresponding emoticons may appear in the word suggestion list. To disable this function, see **P.3-12** "Optional Predictive Functions" (Pre-used Emoticon).

Mail & Web Extensions

1 **In alphanumeric entry, press ⊛**

2 **Select an extension and press ⏺**
- Mail addresses and URLs are single-byte.

Character Code

1 **In Character Code entry mode, enter four digits (see P.18-9)**

Pager Code

1 **Press ⊠ Options**

2 **Select *Input/Conversion* and press ⏺**

3 **Select *Input Method* and press ⏺**

4 **Select *Pager Code* and press ⏺**
Pager Code _ _ appears at the bottom.
■ To switch to Kana Mode, select *Kana* ➡ Press ⏺

5 **Enter two digits (see P.3-9)**
- Pager Mode is active until switched to Kana Mode.

Character Entry Modes

■ For text entry in Pager Mode, press 🔘 to toggle between entry modes as follows:
Single-byte lower case (ꝑ) → Character Code (区) → Double-byte lower case (Ꝑ)
■ While selecting an entry mode, press 🔘 to toggle between upper and lower case modes.

Tip ▶ • Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion is disabled in Pager Mode.
- To enter ゛ or ゜, see Pager Code List on **P.3-9**.

■Pager Code List

• Blanks indicate no entry.

• Grey background indicates upper and lower case available. Press ⊛ to switch immediately after character entry.

Double-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	—	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		🏠	*1
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	✻	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

Single-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		🏠	*1
	8	ﾔ	(	ﾕ	)	ﾖ	✻	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ﾗ	ﾘ	ﾙ	ﾚ	ﾛ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ﾜ	ｦ	ﾝ	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

Double-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				、	。					

Single-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ｯ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ｬ		ｭ		ｮ					*2
	9										
	0				、	。					

*1Press ⑦⓪ to insert line breaks (in mail message text, Text Templates, etc.).

*2Press ⑧⓪ to toggle between upper and lower case.

• ♥ and 🏠 are double-byte.

Conversion Methods (Japanese Only)

Phonetic Conversion

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji.

1 Enter reading in hiragana

2 Press ⊚ **Kanji**

3 Select a kanji and press ●

```
꜒ꜟꜟ                        15:05 ▯
[かい]
001 ◼会解回塊壊廻快怪悔
011 恢傀戒拐怪魁晦槐海灰
021 界皆絵芥蟹開階貝凱蓋
031 街諧駭會偕懐懐槐檜稗
041 薈誨譿豈畍膎鮏濭屆
051 買桧丐乖价傀儿回劃匯
061 哇咼咳喙喟垓塁夬孩屆
071 魁廨徊恔挂揩楷檜楷榾
081 榷效敫淮溰溓溓齝畫㘈
Select  ◉     Back
```
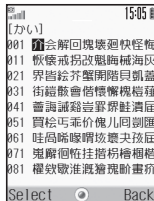
One-Hiragana Conversion

Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.
Example: To enter 鈴木

```
       ⓩⓩ              ●
す        ➡    鈴木      ➡   鈴木▮
```

- One-Hiragana Conversion and User Dictionary (see **P.10-15**) share memory. Selected words may not be saved if User Dictionary is full.
- Up to 20 word selections are saved per hiragana. When memory is full, the oldest entry is deleted to make room for a new entry. However, User Dictionary remains unchanged.

Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

1 Enter hiragana and press ⓞ **kana**

- To enter *AM*, press ②ⓜ⑥ⓜ then ⓞ **kana**.

2 Use ⓺ to select a word and press ●

- Hiragana to Roman Letter Conversion (hiragana with ゛or ゜ is converted to the same characters/Symbols):

あ	@	い	.	う	/	え	_	お	Space
か	A	き	B	く	C	け	Space	こ	Space
さ	D	し	E	す	F	せ	Space	そ	Space
た	G	ち	H	つ	I	て	Space	と	Space
な	J	に	K	ぬ	L	ね	Space	の	Space
は	M	ひ	N	ふ	O	へ	Space	ほ	Space
ま	P	み	Q	む	R	め	S	も	Space
や	T	ゆ	U	よ	V	—	—	—	—
ら	W	り	X	る	Y	れ	Z	ろ	Space
わ	,	を	.	ん	Space	ー (Long Sound)、。Line Break			Space

- Hiragana to Number Conversion (hiragana with ゛or ゜ is converted to the same numbers):
  - ■ あ (A) row...1
  - ■ か (Ka) row...2
  - ■ さ (Sa) row...3
  - ■ た (Ta) row...4
  - ■ な (Na) row...5
  - ■ は (Ha) row...6
  - ■ ま (Ma) row...7
  - ■ や (Ya) row...8
  - ■ ら (Ra) row...9
  - ■ わをんー (Long Sound)、。Line Break...0

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

Quick Conversion helps reduce keystrokes needed to enter frequently used words.

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter *微妙*

Normal Conversion	(6ᵐⁿᵒ)(6ᵐⁿᵒ)(✳️) (**び**) (7ₚₑᵣₛ)(7ₚₑᵣₛ) (**み**) (8ₜᵤᵥ)(8ₜᵤᵥ)(8ₜᵤᵥ)(8ₜᵤᵥ)(8ₜᵤᵥ)(8ₜᵤᵥ) (**よ**) (1.₀)(1.₀)(1.₀) (**う**) ⓠ (convert)
Quick Conversion	(6ᵐⁿᵒ)(✳️) (**ば**) (7ₚₑᵣₛ) (**ま**) (8ₜᵤᵥ) (**や**) (1.₀) (**あ**) ⓞ (convert)

1 Enter hiragana and press ⓞ

Cursor turns green.

- While cursor is green, use ⊙ to segment entered hiragana and then convert one segment at a time.

  ☐ To cancel Quick Conversion, press ⌫ ➡ Press ⓠ for normal conversion

2 Use ⓞ to select a word and press ●

Note ▶ Use Quick Conversion in kanji (hiragana) mode only.

Tip ▶ The most recent selection (mostly nouns) appears first.

One Hiragana Predictive Entry

Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Words starting with a hiragana in the same row (**あ**, **い**, **う**, **え**, **お** for **あ**) appear. Word suggestions vary by time of day.

Example: When あ is entered

5:00 - 10:59	11:00 - 16:59	17:00 - 22:59	23:00 - 4:59
朝一番	あちぃ〜	遊ぼう	アウチ！！
朝帰り	後でね	明日	ありがとう
行ってきます	いただきま〜す♪	急いで行くよ	いえーい！！！
いってらっしゃい	移動中	今どこ？	行こうね
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮

- Words in the list are preset by time blocks.
- If Clock is unset, only words for 11:00 - 16:59 are available.

One Hiragana Word Call

Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for. The most recent selection appears first.

Example: You entered あたあさわ and selected お父さん last time.

ⓞ

| あ | ➡ | お父さん |
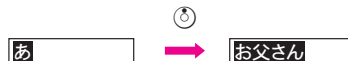
Conversion Settings

Optional Predictive Functions	Activate or cancel Predictive, Previous Usage or Pre-used Emoticon

DefaultOn

Press ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Input/Conversion* ➡ **Press** ●
➡ **Select** *Predictive*, *Previous Usage* **or** *Pre-usedEmoticon*
➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Choose** *On* **(activate) or** *Off* ➡ **Press** ●

Set Low Priority	Select types of words to lower their priorities in the word suggestion list

Press ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Input/Conversion* ➡ **Press** ●
➡ **Select** *Set Low Priority* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select an item**
➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Press** ☺ **OK**

Reset Learning	Clear log of words selected in kanji conversion, Predictive, etc.

Press ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Input/Conversion* ➡ **Press** ●
➡ **Select** *Reset Learning* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Press** ☺ **Yes**

- Words saved in User Dictionary remain.

Editing Characters

Deleting & Replacing

1 **Use** ◌ **to select a character and press** ◌

- The highlighted character is deleted.
- Place cursor at the end of text and press ◌ for 1+ seconds to delete all text. When cursor is located amidst a block of text, characters on and after cursor are deleted.

Mik**a**ko

↓ ◌

Mik**k**o

↓

Miki**k**o

2 **Enter another character**

Copy/Cut & Paste

When *Options* appears, copy or cut and paste text into the same window or another.

1 **Press** ☺ **Options**

2 **Select** *Copy* **or** *Cut* **and press** ●

3 **Use** ◌ **to select the first character of text and press** ●

Start point is set.
☐ To change the start point, press ◌.

4 **Select the end of text and press** ●

5 **Open text paste target window**

6 **Press** ☺ **Options**

7 **Select** *Paste* **and press** ●

15:05

Cut

94(29KB)   a

Mr. Kimura is organising the reunion. Employee o f a trading company. ▌Cal l at home after 10 PM.

End   ▣   Back

Cut

15:05

Message:

75(29KB)   a

Manager of alumni. Emplo yee of a trading company . Call at home after 10 PM. ▌

Options ◉   Back
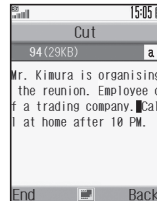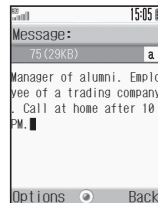
Deleting Text On and After Cursor

1 **Select the first character of text**

2 **Press ⊡ Options**

3 **Select *Delete Posterior* and press ⦿**

Additional Functions

Copying from Phone Book

Insert Phone Book entry items into text entry windows.
Select from phone numbers, mail addresses, postal
addresses, Note, etc.

1 **Press ⊡ Options**
  • Move cursor to target location beforehand.

2 **Select *Advanced* and press ⦿**

3 **Select *Phone Book* and press ⦿**

4 **Open a Phone Book entry or
    *My Details***

5 **Use ⦿ to select an item and
    press ⦿**
  Item is inserted following a comma and
  the entry name.

Using Text Templates

Insert text saved in Text Templates (see **P.9-14**) into text
entry windows.

1 **Press ⊡ Options**

2 **Select *Text Templates* and press ⦿**

3 **Select *Call Templates* and press ⦿**

4 **Select text and press ⦿**
  Text is inserted.

Saving to Text Templates

■ Follow these steps to save text in text entry windows to Text
  Templates.
  **Press ⊡ Options ➡ Select *Text Templates* ➡ Press ⦿
  ➡ Select *Save Templates* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select the
  first character of text ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select the end of
  text ➡ Press ⦿**
  • Save up to 256 characters.

Phone Book

Overview

Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book.

- Entry names appear for calls from numbers saved in Phone Book.
- Set Ringtone/Ringvideo by caller/sender, sort entries into Categories, etc. See **P.4-3** for more about Phone Book entry items.

■**Dialling from Phone Book**
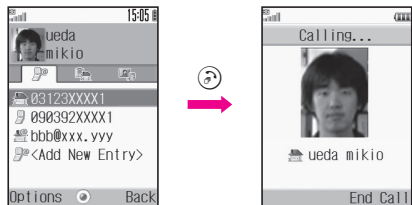
■**Sending SMS/MMS messages from Phone Book**
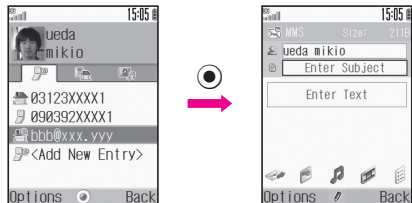
Service Dial

■ Dial service dial numbers saved on USIM Card to use services.
Press ⊙ ➡ Select *Phone Book* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡
Select *Service Dial No.* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select
service ➡ Press ⊙

• For details, contact the service providers.

■**When a Call Arrives**

A call arrives
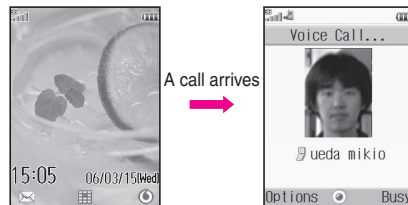
Note ▶ Back-up Important Information
Keep separate copies of important information. When battery is exhausted/removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost; handset damage may also affect information recovery. Vodafone is not liable for damages from lost or altered data.

Tip ▶ • Use Phone Book Lock (see **P.10-17**) to protect entries from accidental alteration and to restrict access to Phone Book information.
• Exchange Phone Book entries via Bluetooth (see **P.10-20**) or infrared (see **P.10-28**) with compatible devices.

Saving to Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

Save up to 750 entries in 804SH Phone Book; USIM Card Phone Book entry limit varies according to card specifications.

Item	Description	Storage Media	
		Handset	**USIM Card**
Last Name:	Enter up to 32 characters	Available	Available
First Name:	(Select *Name:* when saving to USIM Card)		
Reading:	Enter up to 64 characters	Available	Available
Add Phone Number:	Enter up to three numbers on handset and two numbers to USIM Card (32 digits each)	Available	Available
Add Email Address:	Enter up to three addresses on handset and one address on USIM Card (128 single-byte alphanumerics each)	Available	Available
Category:	Sort entries into 16 Categories (handset) and 11 Categories (USIM Card). Category names can be changed. Set Ringtone by Category (handset only).	Available	Available
Address:	Enter postal (zip) code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters) and street name/number (64 characters)	Available	N/A
Homepage:	Save URLs. Enter up to 1,024 characters.	Available	N/A
Note:	Add personal details. Enter up to 256 characters.	Available	N/A
Birthday:	Enter birth date	Available	N/A
Picture:	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/mail	Available	N/A
Tone/Video for Voice Call:	Set Ringtone or Ringvideo by caller/sender	Available	N/A
Tone/Video for Video Call:			
Tone/Video for New Message:			
Secret:	Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret Mode entries	Available	N/A

Note ▶ Depending on the USIM Card in use, some items may not be supported, and character entry limits or number of Categories may be lower. Also, the number of phone numbers or mail addresses per entry may be lower.

New Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, reading, phone number and mail address.
For other items, see **P.4-5** - **4-7**.
Storage media is set to handset by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book*

1 Select *Add New Entry* and press ●

Phone Book Details appears.
☐ If storage media confirmation appears, select *To Handset* or *To USIM* ➡ Press ●

New Entry screen:
Last Name:
First Name:
Reading:
Add Phone Number:
Options ● Back
Phone Book Details

2 Select *Last Name:* and press ●

3 Enter last name and press ●

4 Select *First Name:* and press ●

5 Enter first name and press ●

Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.
• To correct reading, see **P.4-7**.

6 Select *Add Phone Number:* and press ●

7 Enter a phone number and press ●

• Include dialling code for landline numbers.

8 Select an icon and press ●

• To save additional phone numbers, repeat Steps 6 - 8.

9 Select *Add Email Address:* and press ●
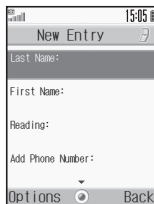
10 Enter a mail address and press ●

11 Select an icon and press ●

• To save additional mail addresses, repeat Steps 9 - 11.

12 Press ◉ Save

Note ▶ To save an entry, enter at least one of the following: a) last name; b) first name; c) phone number; or d) mail address.

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

■ Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Storage Media

■ Follow these steps to set default storage media for new entries.

Press ● ➡ Select *Phone Book* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Save New Entry* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Handset*, *USIM Memory* or *Ask Each Time* ➡ Press ●

• *Handset* is set by default.
• For *Ask Each Time*, select storage media for each new entry.

Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers

■ Follow these steps to show/hide confirmation for saving to Phone Book after calls with unsaved numbers.

Press ● ➡ Select *Phone Book* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *SaveUnregistered* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Incoming Call* or *Outgoing Call* ➡ Press ● ➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ●

• Both are *On* by default.

Personal Ringtone/Ringvideo

Select Ringtones or Ringvideos for incoming calls/mail from numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book.

- Select from preset patterns or use the following melody or video files in Data Folder.
  - Files in Sounds & Ringtones folder (file name: 55 characters or less including extension)
  - Files in Videos folder (file name: 55 characters or less including extension)
- Save files to Data Folder (Videos) before assigning video.
- Files on Memory Card are not supported.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

1 **Select *Tone/Video for Voice Call:*, *Tone/Video for Video Call:* or *Tone/Video for New Message:* and press ●**

■ To set Ringtone/Ringvideo duration for incoming mail, select *Tone/Video for New Message:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Duration* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter time ➡ Press ● (Omit the next steps.)

2 *Ringtone*

1 **Select *Assign Tone* and press ●**

■ To cancel assigned tone, select *Remove Tone/Video* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press 🖃 Yes

2 **Select *Preset Sounds* or *My Sounds* and press ●**

Ringvideo

1 **Select *Assign Video* and press ●**

■ To cancel assigned video, select *Remove Tone/Video* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press 🖃 Yes

3 **Select a file and press ●**

■ For *Preset Sounds*, select a file ➡ Press 🖃 Assign

Note ▶ • When source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved to Memory Card, tone/video set in Sounds & Alerts (see **P.10-11** "Ringtone/Ringvideos") applies. (This also applies if source file is copyrighted and the licence expires.)
• To apply settings to Secret Mode entries, first activate Secret Mode.

Personal Picture

Save an image to each Phone Book entry; saved image appears for calls/mail from phone numbers/mail addresses saved in that entry.

- Select from image files smaller than 40 KB.
- Files on Memory Card are not supported.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

1 **Select *Picture:* and press** ●

■ To cancel saved image, select *Remove Picture* ➡ Press ●
➡ Press ◎ Yes

2 *Selecting from Data Folder*
❶ **Select *Assign Picture* and press** ●
❷ **Select an image and press** ●

Capturing New Image
❶ **Select *Take Picture* and press** ●
❷ **Frame image on Display and press** ●
Captured image appears.
❸ **Press** ●

Note ▶ • Setting is cancelled when source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved to Memory Card.
• To apply the setting to Secret Mode entries, first activate Secret Mode.

Saving Secret Mode Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret Mode entries.
Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

1 **Select *Secret:* and press** ●
2 **Choose *On* and press** ●

Note ▶ • Activate Secret Mode (see **P.10-18**) to open Secret Mode entries.
• To cancel Secret, activate Secret Mode (see **P.10-18**) and choose *Off* in Step 2. To edit Phone Book entries, see **P.4-9** "Editing Phone Book".

Other Phone Book Entry Items

- For descriptions of each item, see **P.4-3**.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

Reading	Select *Reading:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter reading ➡ Press ⬤
Category	Select *Category:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select a Category ➡ Press ⬤
Address	Select *Address:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Postal Code:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter postal (zip) code ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Country:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter country name ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *State/Province:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter name ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *City:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter name ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Street & Number:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter street name/number ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Press ⊙ OK
Homepage	Select *Homepage:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter URL ➡ Press ⬤
Note	Select *Note:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter text ➡ Press ⬤
Birthday	Select *Birthday:* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter date ➡ Press ⬤

Saving from Dialled Numbers/Received Calls

1 Use ⊙ to open Dialled Numbers or Received Calls

2 Use ⟨⟩ to select a record and press ⊚ Options

3 Select *Save Number* and press ⬤

4 *New Entry*

1 Select *As New Contact* and press ⬤

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**) appears. Complete other fields.

Add to Existing Entry

1 Select a Phone Book entry and press ⬤

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see **P.4-4**) appears. Complete other fields.

Note ▶ *Unset ID* records cannot be saved. New numbers cannot be saved to 804SH Phone Book entries with three phone numbers or USIM Card entries with two phone numbers.

Phone Book Memory Status

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Manage Ph.Book*

1 Select *Memory Status* and press ⬤

Numbers of entries on handset and USIM Card appear.
▊ Press ⊚ to exit.

Using Phone Book

Dialling from Phone Book

Search Phone Book by katakana row (default search method) to call numbers within entries.

- To dial numbers saved in Secret Mode entries, first activate Secret Mode (see **P.10-18**).
- To search by other methods, see right.

1 **Press ⓠ**

2 **Use ⊙ to specify katakana row**
- Alternatively, enter Reading to search Phone Book.

3 **Use ⓠ to select an entry and press ◉**

Phone Book entry opens.
■ For entries with multiple numbers, use ⓠ to select one.

4 **Press ⓔ**

804SH dials the number.
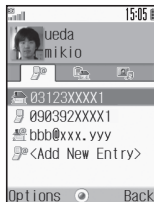
Switching Between 804SH & USIM Card

■ **Press ⓠ ➜ Press ⊟ Options ➜ Select *Settings* ➜ Press ◉ ➜ Select *Ph.Book Location* ➜ Press ◉ ➜ Select *Handset*, *USIM Memory* or *Both* ➜ Press ◉**
- *Handset* is set by default.
- For *Both*, entries in both storage media appear.

Phone Book Search Methods

By Reading Order	Shows entries that start with specified Reading
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Katakana	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row

By Katakana is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➜ *Settings* ➜ *View Phone Book*

1 **Select *By Reading Order*, *By Category* or *By Katakana* and press ◉**

- Dialling Methods:

By Reading Order	Enter Reading ➜ Select an entry ➜ Press ◉ ➜ Press ⓔ
By Category	Select a Category ➜ Press ◉ ➜ Select an entry ➜ Press ◉ ➜ Press ⓔ
By Katakana	Use ⊙ to specify a row ➜ Select an entry ➜ Press ◉ ➜ Press ⓔ

For entries with multiple numbers, select one and press ⓔ.

Tip ▶ In Standby, press ⓠ and follow the steps above.
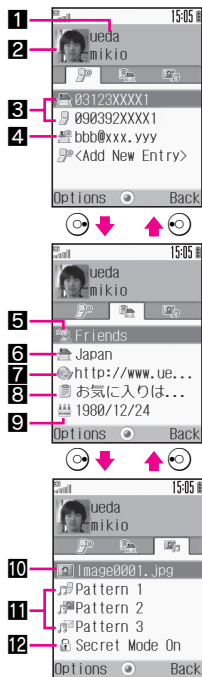
1 **Name**
2 **Image Set for Picture**
3 **Phone Number**
4 **Mail Address**
5 **Category Name**
6 **Address**
7 **Homepage**
8 **Note**
9 **Birthday**
10 **Name of Image Set for Picture**
11 **Tone/Video Set for Incoming Calls/Mail**
12 **Secret Mode Status**

Tip ▶ To see details or use saved information, select an item and press ●. To add information, select an item in angle brackets (*<Add New Entry>*, etc.) and press ●.

Editing Phone Book

To edit Secret Mode entries, first activate Secret Mode (see **P.10-18**).

Correction/Change

1 Press ⊙, then select an entry

2 Press ✉ **Options**

3 Select *Edit* and press ●

4 Select an item and press ●
Edit contents.
• See procedure for saving items to Phone Book (see **P.4-4**).
• Edit Reading after editing names.

5 Press ● when finished
• To edit other items, repeat Steps 4 - 5.
■ To cancel, press ⌂ ➡ Press ✉ **Yes**

6 Press ◎ **Save**
The entry is overwritten.

4

Phone Book

4-9

Copying Phone Book Entries

Exchange entries between handset and USIM Card.
USIM Card does not support some Phone Book entry items
(see **P.4-3**). Those items are deleted when Phone Book
entries are copied from handset.

One Entry

1 **Press ○, then select an entry**

2 **Press ⊚ Options**

3 **Select *Manage Ph.Book* and press ●**

4 *Handset to USIM Card*
   ■ **Select *Copy to USIM* and press ●**
   ② **Press ⊚ Yes**
   USIM Card to Handset
   ■ **Select *Copy to Handset* and press ●**

All Entries

If handset or USIM Card memory is low, entries cannot be
copied all at once.

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Manage Ph.Book* ➡ *Copy All Entries*

1 **Select *USIM to Phone* or *Phone to USIM* and
press ●**

2 **Press ⊚ Yes**

Deleting Phone Book Entries

One by One

1 **Press ○, then select an entry**

2 **Press ⊚ Options**

3 **Select *Delete* and press ●**

4 **Press ⊚ Yes**

Tip ▶ The source files remain in Data Folder, even when
deleting entries containing melodies, video or images set
for incoming calls/mail or Picture.

All at Once

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Manage Ph.Book* ➡ *Del. All Entries*

1 **Select *Phone Entries*, *USIM Entries* or *Both
Entries* and press ●**

2 **Press ⊚ Yes**

3 **Enter Handset Code**

4 **Press ●**

Category Settings

Customise Category options; create new Category names.

Changing Category Name

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Manage Category*

1 Use 🔘 to select handset or USIM

2 Select a Category and press ⊜ Options
- *No Category* (on handset) cannot be renamed.

3 Select *Edit Name* and press ⦿
- ⬛ To change icons, select *Change Icon* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select an icon ➡ Press ⦿ (Omit the next steps.)

4 Enter a name
- Enter up to 16 characters (handset) or 12 characters (USIM Card).

5 Press ⦿
- Repeat Steps 1 - 5 for other Categories.

Category Ringtone/Ringvideo

Set Ringtone or Ringvideo for incoming calls/mail by Category.
- Category Ringtone/Ringvideo setting is not available for Categories on USIM Card.
- Save files to Data Folder (Videos) before assigning video.
- Files on Memory Card are not supported.

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Manage Category*

1 Use 🔘 to select handset

2 Select a Category and press ⊜ Options

3 Select *Assign Ringtone* and press ⦿

4 Select *For Voice Call:*, *For Video Call:* or *For New Message:* and press ⦿

5 *Ringtone*
　　❶ **Select *Assign Tone* and press ⦿**
　　❷ **Select *Preset Sounds* or *My Sounds* and press ⦿**

　　Ringvideo
　　❶ **Select *Assign Video* and press ⦿**
- ⬛ To cancel assigned tone/video, select *Remove Tone/Video* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⊜ Yes

6 Select a file and press ⦿
- ⬛ For *Preset Sounds*, select a file ➡ Press ⊜ Assign
- ⬛ To set Ringtone/Ringvideo duration for incoming mail, press ⦿ after Step 6 ➡ Select *Duration* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter time ➡ Press ⦿

Note ▶ Personal Ringtone/Ringvideo settings (see **P.4-5**) take priority.

Contact Groups

Create Contact Groups to send MMS messages to multiple recipients at one time (see "Contact Groups" in Step 4 on **P.14-7**).

Creating Contact Groups

Create up to five Contact Groups.

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Contact Groups* ➡ *Add New Group*

1 **Enter a Group name and press** ●

Saving Group Members

Save up to 20 members per Group.

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Contact Groups*

1 **Select a Group and press** ●

2 **Select** *Assign New Entry* **and press** ●

3 **Select an entry and press** ●

■ For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use ⟨⟩ to select a Vodafone handset number or mail address ➡ Press ●
• To add other numbers/mail addresses, repeat Steps 2 - 3.

Note ▶ Saved handset numbers/mail addresses are deleted from Contact Groups when changed or deleted in Phone Book.

Editing Contact Groups

Renaming Groups

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Contact Groups*

1 **Select a Group and press** ⊠ **Options**

2 **Select** *Edit Name* **and press** ●

3 **Enter a name and press** ●

• Enter up to 16 characters.

4 **Press** ⊠ **Yes**

Deleting Groups

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Contact Groups*

1 **Select a Group and press** ⊠ **Options**

2 **Select** *Delete* **and press** ●

3 **Press** ⊠ **Yes**

4 **Enter Handset Code and press** ●

Editing Group Members

Deleting Members

1 **Select a member and press ⓒ** `Options`

2 **Select *Remove Entry* and press ●**

3 **Press ⓒ** `Yes`

Tip ▶ Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.

Changing Members

1 **Select a member and press ⓒ** `Options`

2 **Select *Re-assign Entry* and press ●**

3 **Select an entry and press ●**

■ For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use ⓢ to select a Vodafone handset number or mail address ➡ Press ●

4 **Press ⓒ** `Yes`

Speed Dial List

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial List for easy dialling. Voice Mail Centre number is preset in Speed Dial ① and cannot be changed.

1 **Select from ② to ⑨ and press ●**

2 **Select a Phone Book entry and press ●**

■ For entries with multiple numbers, use ⓢ to select one ➡ Press ●

■ To overwrite existing number, press ⓒ `Yes` after Step 2.

Saving from Phone Book

■ **Open a Phone Book entry and select a phone number ➡ Press ⓒ** `Options` **➡ Select *Add Speed Dial* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select from ② to ⑨ ➡ Press ●**

■ To overwrite existing number, press ⓒ `Yes` after the above steps.

Note ▶ Saved phone numbers are deleted from Speed Dial List when edited in Phone Book or when source Phone Book entries are deleted.

Tip ▶ Use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones to call the number saved in Speed Dial ② (see **P.2-20**).

Speed Dial

To dial numbers saved in Secret Mode entries, first activate Secret Mode (see **P.10-18**).

1 Press a key ((2.abc) - (9.wxyz)) for 1+ seconds

804SH dials the number. (Name appears if saved.)
• Alternatively, select a name from Speed Dial List and press (☎).

Delete	Delete entries one at a time

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Speed Dial List*

Select an entry ➡ **Press** (☺) **Options** ➡ **Select** *Delete*
➡ **Press** (●) ➡ **Press** (☺) **Yes**

Tip ▶ Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting Speed Dial entries.

Clear All	Return Speed Dial List to default setting

Main Menu ▶ *Phone Book* ➡ *Speed Dial List*

Press (◌) ➡ **Press** (☺) **Options** ➡ **Select** *Clear All* ➡
Press (●) ➡ **Press** (☺) **Yes**

My Details

Opening My Details

Confirm handset number (phone number on USIM Card).
Save name, reading, phone number, mail address, personal data, etc.

1 Press (●)

2 Select *My Details* and press (●)

• My Details are similar to Phone Book entries (see **P.4-9**).

3 Press (☜) to exit

Tip ▶ Exchange My Details via Bluetooth (see **P.10-20**) or infrared (see **P.10-28**) with compatible devices.

Edit/ Add Details	Edit/add My Details

Main Menu ▶ *My Details*

Press (☺) **Options** ➡ **Select** *Edit/Add Details* ➡
Press (●) ➡ **Select an item** ➡ **Press** (●)
• For more, see **P.4-4**.

Note ▶ Phone number in *Tel 1:* cannot be changed.

Delete	Clear My Details

Main Menu ▶ *My Details*

Press (☺) **Options** ➡ **Select** *Delete* ➡ **Press** (●) ➡
Press (☺) **Yes**

Note ▶ Phone number in *Tel 1:* remains.

Video Call

Getting Started

Communicate with another party using live video images.
- Use Video Call with compatible handsets only.
- Use Internal Camera to send your own image.
- Use External Camera to send higher quality images.

Internal Camera

Window Description

Call Time 0:06

Incoming Image[1]

Outgoing Image[1]
Other Party's Number[2]

Options ● Mute
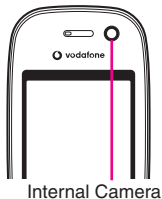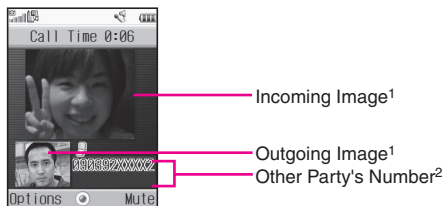
[1] Change incoming/outgoing image size/position (see **P.5-4** "Switch Images").
[2] Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Depending on the other party's handset specifications or settings, incoming image may appear small or not at all.
- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.
- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise. Use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones to reduce noise.
- Increasing Earpiece Volume for Loudspeaker (see **P.5-6**) use may cause feedback/interference. Moderate volume or use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones.
- Handset temperature may rise during Video Calls; this is normal.

Initiating a Video Call

1 Enter a phone number
- Alternatively, select a number from Phone Book (see **P.4-8**), Dialled Numbers (see **P.2-3**) or Received Calls (see **P.2-6**).

2 Press ✉ Options

3 Select *Video Call* and press ●
When the call is answered, incoming image appears.
- Incoming image may not appear depending on handset settings. (Video Call charges apply.)
  ■ For operations during a Video Call, see **P.5-4**.

4 Press 📞 to end call
- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones or a Bluetooth headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)

Tip ▶ Enter a phone number and press 📞 for 1+ seconds to initiate a Video Call.

Answering a Video Call

1 When a Video Call arrives, open handset
Incoming Video Call appears.
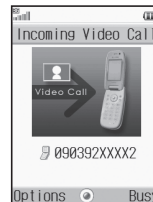
2 *Answer with Video Image*
1 Press 📞
Internal Camera image is sent.
■ For operations during a Video Call, see **P.5-4**.

Answer with Voice Only
1 Press ✉ Options
2 Select *Hide Picture* and press ●
- Outgoing image is suppressed. (Video Call charges apply.)
  ■ For operations during a Video Call, see **P.5-4**.

3 Press 📞 to end call
- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones or a Bluetooth headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)

Rejecting/Redirecting Video Calls

■ When a Video Call arrives, press ✉ Options ➡ Select *Reject Call* or *Busy* ➡ Press ●

Engaged Video Call Operations

Switch Images   Change incoming/outgoing image size/position

During a call, press ●.
- Images toggle as shown below.
- Incoming Priority (incoming image appears larger) is set when initiating Video Calls.

Incoming Priority   Outgoing Priority

Incoming Only   Outgoing Only
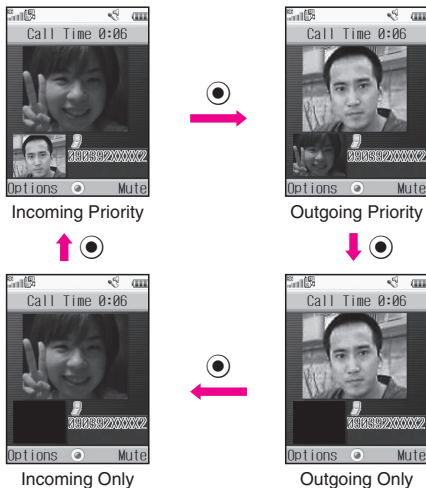
■ To change Outgoing Only or Incoming Only image size, press ☺ **Options** ➡ Select **Display Size** ➡ Press ● ➡ Select **Original Size** or **Enlarge** ➡ Press ●

Note ▶ Outgoing image appears on other party's handset even when Incoming Only is active.

Camera Picture   Change outgoing image

Default Internal Camera

During a call, press ⊙.
- Image toggles as follows: External Camera image ➡ Alternative Image ➡ Internal Camera image.
- Press ⊙ to toggle image in reverse order.
- To change Alternate Image during a call, press ☺ **Options** ➡ Select **Settings** ➡ Press ● ➡ Perform from "Select **Alternative Image**" in "Camera Picture" on **P.5-5**.

Earpiece Volume   Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels)

Default Level 3

During a call, press ◄ or ► ➡ Press ◄ (up) or ► (down) to adjust level
- Each press changes volume by one level.
- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.

Mute   Mute handset microphone

During a call, press ⊙ **Mute**.
■ To cancel, press ⊙ **Unmute**.

Hold   Pause live voice/image transmissions
Send Hold Guidance Picture

During a call, press ☺ Options ➡ Select Hold ➡ Press ●
■ To resume, press ⊙ **Retrieve**.

Loudspeaker   Disable Loudspeaker

During a call, press ☺ Options ➡ Select Loudspeaker Off ➡ Press ●
■ To activate Loudspeaker during a call, press ☺ **Options** ➡ Select **Loudspeaker On** ➡ Press ●

Open Phone Book	Open/save Phone Book entries or My Details

Opening Phone Book

During a call, press ⊚ **Options** ➡ **Select *Open Phone Book* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Select an entry (or My Details) ➡ Press** ⚫

• *My Details* appears only when *View Phone Book* is set to *By Reading Order* or *By Category* (see **P.4-8** "Phone Book Search Method").

Saving Entries

During a call, press ⊚ **Options** ➡ **Select *Open Phone Book* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Press** ⊚ **Options** ➡ **Select *Add New Entry* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4**

Mirror Image	Activate/cancel reversed Internal Camera image

During a call, press ⊚ **Options** ➡ **Select *Settings* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Select *Mirror Image* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press** ⚫

• External Camera image, Alternative Image and incoming images cannot be reversed.
• Mirror Image is *On* when initiating Video Calls.

Exposure	Adjust outgoing image brightness (5 levels: -2 to +2)

During a call, press ⊚ **Options** ➡ **Select *Settings* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Select *Exposure* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Use** ⚪ **to adjust level ➡ Press** ⚫

• Alternative Image appearance is fixed.
• Exposure is *Level 0* when initiating Video Calls.

Transfer Audio	Select sound output when a handsfree device, etc. is used for conversations

During a call, press ⊚ **Options** ➡ **Select *Settings* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Select *Transfer Audio* ➡ Press** ⚫ **➡ Select *To Handset* or *To Bluetooth* ➡ Press** ⚫

Other Engaged Video Call Operations

▋ Mobile Light
  Press (#🔆) for 1+ seconds to turn on or off.
• (Use Mobile Light as a strobe for External Camera.)
▋ Digital Zoom
  Press ⚪ (zoom in) or ⚪ (zoom out).
• Select from two settings for Internal Camera or nine for External Camera.
▋ To change Incoming Picture, Outgoing Picture, Backlight or Hold Guidance Pict (see **P.5-6**) during a call, press ⊚ **Options**, select *Settings* and press ⚫.

Video Call Settings

To change these settings during calls, see **P.5-4** - **5-5**.

Camera Picture	Outgoing image is either live video via Internal Camera or Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls

Default Internal Camera

Main Menu ➤ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call* (⟳) ➡ *Video Call* ➡ *Camera Picture*

Select *Default Image* ➡ Press ⚫ **➡ Select *Internal Camera* or *Alternative Image* ➡ Press** ⚫

▋ To change Alternative Image, select *Alternative Image* ➡ Press ⚫ ➡ Select *Preset Picture* or *My Pictures* ➡ Press ⚫ ➡ Select an image ➡ Press ⚫ twice
• External Camera image is selectable during a call.

Loudspeaker | Activate/cancel Loudspeaker for Video Calls

`Default`On

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call ()* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ *Loudspeaker*

Choose *On* (activate Loudspeaker) or *Off* ➡ Press ⊙

Incoming Picture | Select quality of incoming images

`Default`Normal

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call ()* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ *Incoming Picture*

Select *Normal*, *Quality Prior* or *Frame Rate Prior* ➡ Press ⊙

• Select *Quality Prior* for higher quality and *Frame Rate Prior* for faster frame rate.

Outgoing Picture | Select quality of outgoing images

`Default`Standard

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call ()* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ *Outgoing Picture*

Select *Normal*, *Quality Prior* or *Frame Rate Prior* ➡ Press ⊙

• Select *Quality Prior* for higher quality and *Frame Rate Prior* for faster frame rate.

Backlight | Select a Backlight status for Video Calls

`Default`Always On

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call ()* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ *Backlight*

Select *Always On, Always Off* or *Normal Setting* ➡ Press ⊙

• Selecting *Normal Setting* applies Display Backlight setting (see **P.10-7**).

Mute Microphone | Mute handset microphone for Video Calls

`Default`Off

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call ()* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ *Mute Microphone*

Choose *On* (mute) or *Off* ➡ Press ⊙

Hold Guidance Pict | Select image that can be sent while calls are on hold

`Default`Picture 1

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call ()* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ *Hold Guidance Pict*

Select *Preset Picture* or *My Picture* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select an image ➡ Press ⊙ twice

Camera

Getting Started

804SH features a 2.0 megapixel CCD camera. Capture still images (see **P.6-5**) or record video (see **P.6-7**).

Tip ▶ Use Internal Camera (see **P.1-7 ⑧**) or External Camera (see **P.1-7 ㉙**); unless otherwise noted, mobile camera operations are described for External Camera.

Mobile Camera Basics

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover (see **P.1-7 ㉙**) with a soft cloth before use.
- Handset movement may blur images; hold 804SH firmly or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer (see **P.6-10**).
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's colour filter.

Shutter Click

■ Shutter click volume is fixed, and sounds even in Manner mode.
■ To change shutter click sound for still images, see **P.6-14**.

Incoming Calls/Alarm while Using Camera

■ Mobile camera shuts down for incoming calls and Alarm.
■ When recording video, Alarm Times are announced after mobile camera operations are concluded.
■ Captured image/recorded video is temporarily saved. End the call or close Alarm Time notice to return.

Precautions for Video Recording

■ When battery is low (▭ or ▯), Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low while recording video, recording stops. (Recorded video is saved.)

Auto Shut-off

■ Before image capture, mobile camera shuts down after five minutes of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Exporting Images

■ View images and video on PCs, TVs or other display devices via Video Cable (see **P.10-8** "Viewing Images on External Devices").

Camera Display Indicators

Photo Camera Mode
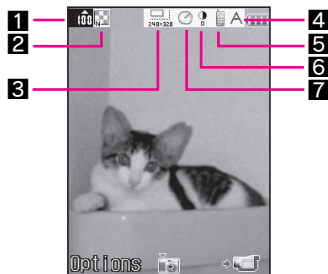
■**Capacity (see P.6-5)**
- 📷: 101 or more
- Red background: 3 or less

■**Image Quality (see P.6-16)**
📷: Normal, 📷: Fine, 📷: High Quality

■**Picture Size (see P.6-15)**

■**Mobile Light (see P.6-15)**
💡: On, 💡: Automatic, 💡: Low Light

Scene (see P.6-16)
A: Automatic, 🌙: Night, 🏃: Sports, 📄: Characters

■**Save to (see P.6-17)**
📱: Handset, 💾: Memory Card (SD Pictures),
💾: Memory Card (SD DCIM), 💾: Ask Each Time

■**Exposure (see P.6-15)**
Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright
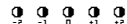
■**Self-timer (see P.6-10)**
⏱: Self-timer Active

Continuous Shoot (see P.6-11)
- 🎞 - 🎞: Captured/Total
- 🎞: 4 Pictures, 🎞: 9 Pictures, 🎞: Overlapped, 🎞: Bracket
- 🎞, etc.: Self-timer and Continuous Shoot are active.
- 📷: Index Image (composite image for Overlapped) is on Display.

Video Camera Mode
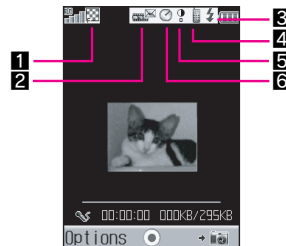
■**Image Quality (see P.6-16)**
📷: Normal, 📷: Fine, 📷: High Quality
■**Record Time/Size (see P.6-16)**
■**Mobile Light (see P.6-15)**
💡: On, 💡: Automatic
■**Save to (see P.6-17)**
📱: Handset, 💾: Memory Card, 💾: Ask Each Time
■**Exposure (see P.6-15)**
Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright
■**Self-timer (see P.6-10)**
⏱: Self-timer Active

6

Camera

6-3
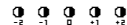
Key Assignments
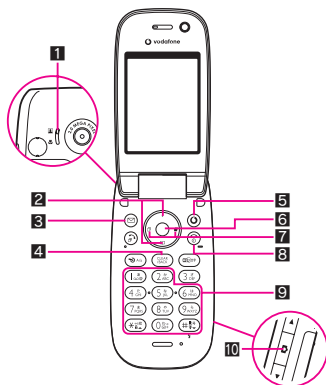
1 Portrait (👤)/Macro (🌷) Selector

- Slide to Macro to capture images as close as 10 cm. Allow at least 40 cm for Portrait.

2 Digital Zoom

- ⓧ (zoom in), ⓠ (zoom out)
- Alternatively, use ◄ (zoom in) and ► (zoom out).

3 Options
4 Cancel

Press to start over.

5 Toggle Mode
6 Shutter
7 Exposure

- ⊙ (darker), ⊙ (brighter)

8 End

9 Function Shortcuts

Activate mobile camera and press the following keys to use the corresponding functions.

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode. For details, see **P.6-6** "Still Image Functions" and **P.6-8** "Video Recording Operations".

(1)	Maximise or cancel Digital Zoom
(2)	Adjust Exposure (see **P.6-15**) • Press (2), then use ⊙ to adjust level.
(4)	Switch save location (see **P.6-17** "Save to")
(5)	Change image size (see **P.6-15** "Picture Size" or **P.6-16** "Record Time/Size")
(6)	Switch Scene options for image capture (see **P.6-16**) Turn Microphone on/off for video recording (see **P.6-16**)
(7)	Change image quality (see **P.6-16**)
(8)	Activate/cancel Self-timer (see **P.6-10**)
(9)	Change Mobile Light colour while the light illuminates (see **P.6-15**)
(0)	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see **P.6-14** "Toggle Preview")
(✳)	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see **P.6-17** "Internal/External Camera")
(#)	Turn Mobile Light on/off (see **P.6-15**)

10 Camera Startup & Shutter

In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate the mode used last (default: Photo Camera).

Help

■ Follow these steps to view a summary of key assignments.
Activate mobile camera and press ⊡ **Options** ➡
Select *Help* ➡ **Press** ●
- Press ⓠ to scroll down.
- Press ● to return.

6-4

Still Images

Photo Camera Mode

Capture images to send via MMS, save as Wallpaper, etc. Various settings and functions are available for camera use.

Picture Size	W 1216 x H 1632 dots W 960 x H 1280 dots (Quad-VGA) W 768 x H 1024 dots (XGA) W 480 x H 640 dots (VGA) W 240 x H 320 dots (QVGA) W 120 x H 160 dots (QQVGA)
Format	JPEG (.jpg)[1]
Save Location	Handset Data Folder (Pictures) or Memory Card Data Folder (Pictures/DCIM[2])
Image Quality	Normal/Fine/High Quality
Digital Zoom	W 1216 x H 1632 dots: None W 960 x H 1280 dots: 1x - 1.25x W 768 x H 1024 dots: 1x - 1.6x W 480 x H 640 dots: 1x - 2.5x W 240 x H 320 dots: 1x - 10x W 120 x H 160 dots: 1x - 20x
MMS Attachment	OK
Memory Capacity	1,260 files[3]

[1]Default file names appear as *Image0001*, *Image0002*, etc.
[2]Save W 480 x H 640 dots or larger images to DCIM.
[3]Approximate value for handset Data Folder, with default image size and quality.

Tip ▶ • Select storage media beforehand or each time you save an image (see **P.6-17** "Save to").
• Saved video, melodies or V-applications reduce still image memory.
• To check memory status, see **P.9-2**.

Capturing Still Images

Main Menu ▶ *Camera*

1 Frame image on Display

■ In Video Camera mode, press ⊙ (📷) to switch to Photo Camera.
■ Key Assignments: see **P.6-4**
■ Special Shooting Modes: see **P.6-10**
■ Camera Settings: see **P.6-14**

Photo Camera

2 Press ⊙ or 📷

Shutter clicks and captured image appears on Display.

• When Auto Save is *On*, captured image is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.

■ To start over, press ⊙ Cancel or ⌫.
■ To send image via MMS, press ⊡ For Msg.
  ➡ Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**

3 Press ● to save

Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.
■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a
  location ➡ Press ●
■ To open saved images, see **P.6-9** "Opening Still Images".

4 Press ⊙ to exit

Tip ▶ **When Captured Image is Unsaved**
Finished? appears.
• Press ⊙ **Yes** to end. Handset returns to Standby.
• Press ⊙ **No** to return to captured image.

Still Image Functions

Press ⊚ **Options** before image capture to use the following
functions:

Exposure		Adjust amount of light (see **P.6-15**)
Picture Size		Select image size (see **P.6-15**)
Picture Quality		Select *Normal*, *Fine* or *High Quality* (see **P.6-16**)
My Pictures		Open Data Folder files (see **P.6-9**)
Modes*	Mobile Light	Select mode and colour (see **P.6-15**)
	Scene	Select a mode according to lighting or subject (see **P.6-16**)
	Self-timer	Set Self-timer (see **P.6-10**)
	Add Frame	Add frames (see **P.6-12**)
	Continuous Shoot	Capture images sequentially (see **P.6-11**)
	Camera Effects	Capture images with special effects (see **P.6-13**)
Settings	Hide Indicators/ Normal Finder	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see **P.6-14**)
	Shutter Sound	Change shutter click sound (see **P.6-14**)
	Save Pictures to	Select handset or Memory Card (see **P.6-17**)
	Auto Save	Select whether to save captured image automatically (see **P.6-18**)
to Video Camera		Switch to Video Camera (see **P.6-17**)
Internal Camera/ External Camera		Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see **P.6-17**)
Help		View a summary of key assignments (see **P.6-4**)

*Available for External Camera.

6

Camera

Video

Video Camera Mode

Record short video clips to send via MMS. Use Memory Cards to save long recordings (recording time depends on the card capacity.)

Image Size		W 176 x H 144 dots (QCIF) W 128 x H 96 dots (SubQCIF)	W 240 x H 320 dots (QVGA)	
Format		MPEG-4 (.3gp)[1]		MPEG-4 (.ASF)[2]
Save Location		Handset or Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)[3]	Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)	Memory Card (SD VIDEO)
Image Quality		Normal/Fine/ High Quality	—	
Digital Zoom		2.5x - 4.6x		
MMS Attachment		OK		N/A
Recording Time (per shot)	**For Message**	Approx. 60 seconds (Normal) Approx. 50 seconds (Fine) Approx. 30 seconds (High Quality)	—	
	Extended Video	30 minutes		Capacity-based

[1]Default file names appear as **video0001.3gp**, **video0002.3gp**, etc.
[2]Default file names appear as **MOL001.ASF**, **MOL002.ASF**, etc.
[3]Extended Video recordings are saved to Memory Card.

Tip ▶ • For best results, record within 1.5 metres, in well-lit conditions.
• Select storage media beforehand or each time you save a video file (see **P.6-17** "Save to").
• Saved still images, melodies or V-applications reduce video memory.
• To check memory status, see **P.9-2**.

Recording Video

Make sure battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory before recording video. When battery is low (🔲 or 🔋), Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low or memory becomes full while recording video, recording stops.

Main Menu ▶ *Camera*

1 Press ⊙ (→ 🔲)
• Omit this step if Video Camera is already active.

2 Frame image on Display
▊ Key Assignments: see **P.6-4**
▊ Special Shooting Modes: see **P.6-10**
▊ Camera Settings: see **P.6-14**
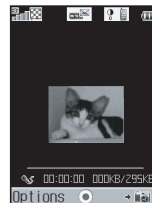
Video Camera

3 Press ● or 📷

Recording begins after a tone.
■ To start over, press ◉ Cancel.

4 To stop, press ● or 📷

Recording stops with a tone.
- Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached or memory becomes full.
- When Auto Save is *On*, recorded video is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.
  ■ To play back, select *Preview* ➤ Press ●
    ■ To toggle Display Size during playback, press (0☆) (see **P.7-14** "Display Size").
  ■ To start over, press ◉ Back.
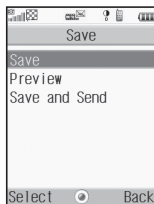
5 To save, select *Save* and press ●

Video is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.
■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➤ Press ●

6 Press ⌃ to exit

Tip ▶ When Recorded Video is Unsaved
Finished? appears.
- Press ✉ Yes to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Press ◉ No to return to Menu.

Video Recording Operations

Before Recording

Press ✉ Options to use the following functions:

Exposure	Adjust amount of light (see **P.6-15**)
Record Time/Size	Select a format based on recording time and image size (see **P.6-16**)
Video Quality[1]	Select *Normal*, *Fine* or *High Quality* (see **P.6-16**)
My Videos	Open Data Folder files (see **P.6-9**)
Modes[2]	Mobile Light	Select mode and colour (see **P.6-15**)
	Self-timer	Set Self-timer (see **P.6-10**)
Settings	Microphone	Activate to record sound (see **P.6-16**)
	Video Encode[1]	Select a video encoding format (see **P.6-17**)
	Save Videos to[3]	Select handset or Memory Card (see **P.6-17**)
	Auto Save	Select whether to save recorded video automatically (see **P.6-18**)
to Photo Camera	Switch to Photo Camera (see **P.6-17**)
Internal Camera[1]/ External Camera[1]	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see **P.6-17**)
Help	View a summary of key assignments (see **P.6-4**)

[1]Not available for QVGA images (W 240 x H 320 dots).
[2]Available for External Camera.
[3]Available when Record Time/Size is set to *For Message*.

6 Camera

Before Saving

The following menu items appear after recording:

Save	Save video to handset or Memory Card (see **P.6-8**)
Preview	Play video (see **P.6-8**)
Save and Send[*]	Attach video to MMS Mail (see **P.6-14**)

[*]Available when Record Time/Size is set to *For Message*.

Opening Images & Playing Video

To open files from Data Folder, see **P.9-4**.

Opening Still Images

Main Menu ▶ *Camera* ▶ *Activate Photo Camera*

1 **Press** ⊚ **Options**

2 **Select** *My Pictures* **and press** ●

■ When Memory Card is inserted, select *Pictures* or *Camera Images* (DCIM) ▶ Press ●
  ■ Use ⊙ to switch between handset and Memory Card.
■ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press ●

3 **Select a file and press** ●

■ To open other files, press ⊙ **Back** ▶ Select one ▶ Press ●

Playing Video

Main Menu ▶ *Camera* ▶ *Activate Video Camera*

1 **Press** ⊚ **Options**

2 **Select** *My Videos* **and press** ●

■ Use ⊙ to switch between handset and Memory Card.
■ To open a created sub folder, select it ▶ Press ●

3 **Select a file and press** ●

Video plays. Press ● to pause/resume playback.
■ To open other files, press ⊙ **Back** ▶ Select one ▶ Press ●

SD VIDEO Play QVGA size (.ASF) video (W 240 x H 320 dots)

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *SD VIDEO*

Select a file ▶ **Press** ●
■ To open other files, press ⊙ **Back** ▶ Select one ▶ Press ●

Special Shooting Modes

Self-timer

Delay shutter release by 10 seconds after Shutter Key is pressed to capture still images or record video.

- Switch to External Camera to use Self-timer.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-5**) or recording video (after Step 2 on **P.6-7**).
- Self-timer is *Off* by default.

1 **Press ⊚ Options**

2 **Select *Modes* and press ●**

3 **Select *Self-timer* and press ●**

4 **Choose *On* and press ●**

Viewfinder returns (⊘ appears).
■ To cancel, choose *Off* ➜ Press ●

5 **Frame image on Display and press ● or** ⌷◻

Tone sounds and countdown starts.

- After 10 seconds, shutter is released and captured image appears or video recording starts.
  ■ To cancel Self-timer during countdown, press ⓪ Cancel.
  ■ Viewfinder returns. (Self-timer remains active.)

6 *Saving Still Images*
❶ Press ●

Self-timer is cancelled and Viewfinder returns.
■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➜ Press ●

Saving Video
❶ To stop, press ● or ⌷◻

❷ To save, select *Save* and press ●

Self-timer is cancelled and Viewfinder returns.
■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➜ Press ●

7 **Press ⓧ to exit**
■ When Captured Image/Recorded Video is Unsaved: see **P.6-6** or **P.6-8**

Note ▶ Self-timer is not available when shooting speed for Continuous Shoot (see **P.6-11**) is *Manual*.

Self-timer Details

■ To release shutter manually during countdown, press ● or ⌷◻ . Image is captured or video recording starts and Self-timer is cancelled.
■ Incoming calls and Alarm interrupt countdown. (Self-timer is cancelled and handset returns to Standby.)
■ Available functions during countdown are Digital Zoom, Mobile Light, and Exposure (adjust level for video recording).

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Capture a series of 4 or 9 separate images automatically with a single press of the Shutter Key. Select from three speed settings or choose the manual option to control the rate at which images are captured.

4 Pictures[1]	Capture four separate images with Index Image[2]
9 Pictures[3]	Capture nine separate images with Index Image[2]
Overlapped[3]	Capture five images to create a composite image
Bracket[3]	Capture nine separate images with Index Image[2]. Exposure and Mobile Light colour vary slightly for each shot.

[1]Available when Picture Size is *480 x 640* or smaller. (Index Image is not created for *480 x 640*.)

[2]Index Image consists of reduced images of each shot.

[3]Available when Picture Size is *240 x 320* or smaller.

- Press ● or ⬜ for the first shot. Handset captures the rest automatically.
- In 4 Pictures or 9 Pictures mode, select shutter interval from three levels, or select *Manual* to release shutter manually.
- Switch to External Camera to use Continuous Shoot.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-5**).

1 Press ☺ Options

2 Select *Modes* and press ●

3 Select *Continuous Shoot* and press ●

4 Select from *4 Pictures* to *Bracket* and press ●

■ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ● (Omit the next steps.)

5 Select speed and press ●

Viewfinder returns with the corresponding indicator (see **P.6-3**).
- *Manual* is not available when Self-timer (see **P.6-10**) is active.
- Available shooting speed options vary by selected Picture Size.

6 Frame image on Display and press ● or ⬜

The first frame is captured with subsequent frames captured at selected speed.
- For manual control (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat Step 6 for each frame.

■ To stop, press ⊙ Cancel.
  ■ To save captured images, skip ahead to Step 8.
  ■ To cancel during manual shutter control, press ⊙ Cancel. (Captured images are deleted and Viewfinder returns.)

7 Index Image or a composite image appears

- When Picture Size is *480 x 640*, the first captured image appears.

■ Use ☼ to toggle between frames and Index Image.
  ■ To save images individually, select a frame or Index Image and proceed to Step 8.

4 Pictures

■ To send image via MMS, press ☺ For Msg ➡ Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**
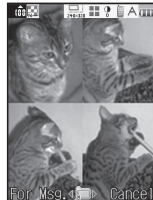
8 To save, press ●

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➡ Press ●

9 *Saving All Images*

❶ Select *All Pictures* and press ●

Images are saved and Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.

Saving the Selected Image

❶ Select *Selected Picture* and press ●

Image is saved and captured image returns with Continuous Shoot active.

■ To save other images, use ⊙ to select one ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Selected Picture* ➡ Press ●
■ Press ◉ **Cancel** to return to Viewfinder.

10 Press ⊚ to exit

■ When Captured Image is Unsaved: see **P.6-6**

Note ▶ In low light or while Mobile Light is on, shooting speed may slow down.

Tip ▶ **When Only Selected Image is Saved**
Finished? appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.
• Press ⊚ **Yes** to end. Handset returns to Standby.
• Press ◉ **No** to return to captured image.

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

• In addition to Preset Frames, use transparent PNG files (40 KB or smaller) obtained via Web or MMS.
• Select Picture Size *240 x 320* or *120 x 160* to add frames.
• Switch to External Camera to add frames.
• Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-5**); after Viewfinder returns, perform from Step 1 on **P.6-5** to complete.

1 Press ⊚ **Options**

2 Select *Modes* and press ●

3 Select *Add Frame* and press ●

4 *Preset Frames*

❶ Select *Preset Frames* and press ●

❷ Select a frame and press ⊚ **Assign**

■ To check frames, select one ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ◉ **Back** to return.

Original Frames

❶ Select *My Pictures* and press ●

• Some images may not be used as a frame.

❷ Select a frame and press ●

■ To change image (frame), press ◉ **Back**.

❸ Press ●

Cancelling

❶ Choose *Off* and press ●

Tip ▶ In Continuous Shoot, frame is added to each image.

Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

Capture images with special effects.

- Select Picture Size **240 x 320** or **120 x 160** to use Camera Effects.
- Switch to External Camera to use Camera Effects.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-5**); after Viewfinder returns, perform from Step 1 on **P.6-5** to complete.

1 **Press ⊚ Options**

2 **Select *Modes* and press ⦿**

3 **Select *Camera Effects* and press ⦿**

4 **Select an effect and press ⊚ Assign**
■ To check effects, select one ➔ Press ⦿
  ■ Press ⦿ Back to return.
■ To cancel, choose *Off* ➔ Press ⦿

Sending Still Images & Video

Still Images

Capture and send images as MMS Mail attachments.
To attach images in Data Folder, see **P.9-6**.

1 **Capture an image (perform Steps 1 - 2 on P.6-5)**
■ To attach Continuous Shoot images, after Step 7 on **P.6-11**, use ⊙ to select a frame or Index Image.

2 **Press ⊚ For Msg.**
Image is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with image attached.
■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press ⦿

3 **Complete other fields and send MMS Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-6)**

Tip ▶ Make sure that the recipient's handset is able to receive attachments. For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Video Clips

Send recorded video clips via MMS.

- For details of attachable files, see the table on **P.6-7**.
- To attach video files saved in Data Folder, see **P.9-6**.

1 **Record video (perform Steps 1 - 4 on P.6-7)**

2 **Select *Save and Send* and press ⦿**

Video is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with the video file attached.

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➡ Press ⦿

3 **Complete other fields and send MMS Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-6)**

Note ▶ • Send video clips to MMS- or VGS-compatible Vodafone handsets.
 • Only MPEG 4-compatible Vodafone handsets support video files recorded on 804SH.

Tip ▶ For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Camera Settings

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode.
- Shortcut keys are assigned to some functions (see **P.6-4** "Function Shortcuts").

Shooting Options

Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-5**) or recording video (after Step 2 on **P.6-7**); after Viewfinder returns, perform from Step 1 on **P.6-5** or Step 2 on **P.6-7** to complete.

Hide Indicators/ Normal Finder	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display		
Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	✕

DefaultNormal Finder

Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Hide Indicators* or *Normal Finder* ➡ Press ⦿

Shutter Sound	Change shutter click sound		
Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	✕

DefaultPattern 1

Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Shutter Sound* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a pattern ➡ Press ⦿

■ To check sound, select a pattern and press ⊚ Play .
- Volume is fixed.
- Shutter click sound for Continuous Shoot is unique and fixed.

Mobile Light	Select mode and colour		
Photo Camera	○[1]	Video Camera	○[1, 2]

[1]Available for External Camera.
[2]*Low Light* is not available.
DefaultOff/White

Mode

Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Modes* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select *Mobile Light* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *Switch On/
Off* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a mode** ➡ **Press** ●

• Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down.

On	Mobile Light activates (and brightens for still image capture)
Automatic	Mobile Light activates when light is low and brightens for image capture
Low Light	Mobile Light activates and brightness is constant

Colour

Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Modes* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select *Mobile Light* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *Light
Colour* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a colour** ➡ **Press** ●

■ To return to Viewfinder, press ◉ **Back** three times.

Note ▶ • Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
• Even when *On* or *Automatic* is selected, Mobile Light may not illuminate if battery is low.

Image Settings

Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-5**) or recording video (after Step 2 on **P.6-7**); after Viewfinder returns, perform from Step 1 on **P.6-5** or Step 2 on **P.6-7** to complete.

Exposure	Adjust brightness for still images and video		
Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○

Default0 (standard)

Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Exposure* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Use ◌ **to adjust level**

• Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down, when switching between Photo Camera and Video Camera (see **P.6-17** "Photo Camera/Video Camera") or when switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (see **P.6-17** "Internal/External Camera").

Picture Size	Select still image size		
Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	✕

Default240 x 320

Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Picture Size* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select a size (see P.6-5) ➡ **Press** ●

• Select *240 x 320* or *120 x 160* for Internal Camera.
• To change video image size, see **P.6-16** "Record Time/Size".

<table>
<tr><td>Image Quality</td><td colspan="2">Select image or video quality</td></tr>
</table>

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○*

*Not available for QVGA images (W 240 x H 320 dots).
Default Normal (Photo Camera), Fine (Video Camera)

Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Picture Quality or Video Quality* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select quality ➡ Press ●

- The image quality increases as follows: *Normal → Fine → High Quality*. Saving higher quality images/video requires more space in memory.

<table>
<tr><td>Scene</td><td colspan="2">Select a mode according to lighting or subject</td></tr>
</table>

Photo Camera	○*	Video Camera	×

*Available for External Camera.
Default Automatic

Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Modes* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Scene* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a mode ➡ Press ●

- Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down, when switching between Photo Camera and Video Camera (see **P.6-17** "Photo Camera/Video Camera") or when switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (see **P.6-17** "Internal/External Camera").

Automatic	Automatic adjustment
Night	Use in low light conditions
Sports	Best suited for action sports or fast-moving subjects
Characters	Most suitable for high contrast black and white subjects

<table>
<tr><td>Record Time/Size</td><td colspan="2">Select For Message to record short video (up to 295 KB) to send via MMS
For longer video recording, select Extended Video</td></tr>
</table>

Photo Camera	×	Video Camera	○

Default For Message/Large (QCIF)

Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Record Time/Size* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *For Message* or *Extended Video* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an option ➡ Press ●

☐ For Extended Video options, press ● after the above steps.
- Extended Video recordings are saved to Memory Card.

QVGA (3gp)*	W 240 x H 320 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)
QVGA (asf)*	W 240 x H 320 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.ASF)
Large (QCIF)	W 176 x H 144 dots Format: 3GPP (.3gp)
Small (SubQCIF)	W 128 x H 96 dots Format: 3GPP (.3gp)

*Available for *Extended Video*.

<table>
<tr><td>Microphone</td><td colspan="2">Record sound together with video</td></tr>
</table>

Photo Camera	×	Video Camera	○

Default On

Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Microphone* ➡ Press ● ➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ●

Video Encode	Select a video encoding format

Photo Camera	✕	Video Camera	○*

*Not available for QVGA images (W 240 x H 320 dots).
Default MPEG4 (Japan)

Press ⓐ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Settings* ➡ **Press** ⬤ ➡
Select *Video Encode* ➡ **Press** ⬤ ➡ **Select**
H.263(Europe) or *MPEG4(Japan)* ➡ **Press** ⬤

Additional Settings

Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-5**) or recording video (after Step 2 on **P.6-7**); after Viewfinder returns, perform from Step 1 on **P.6-5** or Step 2 on **P.6-7** to complete.

Photo Camera/ Video Camera	Switch between Photo Camera and Video Camera

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○

Press ⓐ **Options** ➡ **Select** *to Video Camera* or *to Photo Camera* ➡ **Press** ⬤

Internal/ External Camera	Switch between Internal Camera and External Camera

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○*

*Switch to External Camera to record QVGA video (W 240 x H 320 dots).
Default External Camera

Press ⓐ **Options** ➡ **Select** *External Camera* or *Internal Camera* ➡ **Press** ⬤

Save to	Select a save location for images or video

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○*

*Available when Record Time/Size is set to *For Message*.
Default Handset

Press ⓐ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Settings* ➡ **Press** ⬤ ➡
Select *Save Pictures to* or *Save Videos to* ➡ **Press** ⬤
➡ **Select a location** or *Ask Each Time* ➡ **Press** ⬤

- For *Ask Each Time*, confirmation appears each time you save an image or video.

Camera Mode/Size	Save Location
Photo Camera **(120 x 160 or 240 x 320)**	Phone Memory [handset] Memory Card
Photo Camera **(480 x 640 or larger)**	Phone Memory [handset] SD (Pictures) [Memory Card] SD (DCIM) [Memory Card]
Video Camera	To Phone Me... [handset] To Memory Card

Note ▶ • *Ask Each Time* is not available when Auto Save (see **P.6-18**) is active.
• To save to Memory Card, insert a card before saving image or recording video.

Auto Save	Select whether to save captured images or recorded video automatically

Photo Camera	○	Video Camera	○

Press ⊠ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Settings* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select *Auto Save* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Choose** *On* **or** *Off* ➡
Press ●

Default Off

Note ▶ Auto Save is disabled when *Ask Each Time* is set for Save Pictures to or Save Videos to (see **P.6-17**).

Media Player

Media Player Basics

Use Media Player to record and listen to music (Music Player) or play video (Video Player). Save video/music files to handset or Memory Card (including SD VIDEO and SD AUDIO). To open files, specify the location first.

Video (Video Player) My Videos	Music (Music Player) My Music
Handset	Handset/Memory Card
Memory Card	
SD VIDEO	SD AUDIO
Memory Card	Memory Card
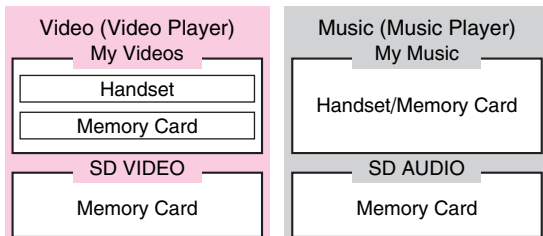
- For Playlist details, see **P.7-19**.
- Playback stops when battery is low. Charge battery and resume from where it stopped (see Step 1 on **P.7-11** or **P.7-13**).
- Consume media as it downloads (Streaming: see **P.15-10**).

When Manner Mode is Active

■ When Media Player is opened, sound output confirmation appears.
- Press ✉ `Yes` to cancel Manner mode temporarily. Handset speaker outputs sound at the volume set for Media Player.
- Press ◎ `No` to stay in Manner mode. Use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones to listen to music without bothering others.

Incoming Calls/Mail during Playback

■ Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.
- When playback stops while streaming, the URL is saved to Access History.
■ An icon appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

Downloading Music/Video

Open music/video-related links in Vodafone Web Menu directly from Media Player to download music (Chaku-Uta) and video.

- Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.
- Use Music Search (see **P.7-3**) to search by title, artist, etc.

Main Menu ▶ Media Player

1 **Select *Music* or *Videos* and press ●**

2 **Select *Download Music* or *Download Videos* and press ●**

Handset connects to the Network and the corresponding Vodafone Web Menu opens.
- Follow the links to download music/video.

Media Player

7-2

Music Search

■ Follow these steps to access the Vodafone Music Search site.

In Step 1 on P.7-2, select *Music* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡
Select *Music Search* ➡ Press ⬤

• Fill in fields or follow links to search for/download music.

Saving Music Files from PCs

Save music files onto Memory Cards from CDs, etc. using PCs or other devices to play them on handset Music Player.

Precautions for Handling Music Files on PCs

■Respect copyrights.

• Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using music saved on Memory Cards.
• Under copyright law, music saved on Memory Cards is limited to private use.

■Use music files compliant with the SD-Audio standard.

804SH supports Secure MP3, Secure AAC and AAC files compliant with the SD-Audio standard.

■ For AAC files, see "Precautions for Handling AAC Files" on the right.

■Save music to the specified directory.

Save music to the following folder on Memory Card using a miniSD™ reader/writer or other compatible device.

PRIVATE/VODAFONE/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones

Tip ▶ For more about saving music files from PCs, see "Utility Software Starter Guide" on Utility Software CD-ROM.

Precautions for Handling AAC Files

■Use software supporting AAC conversion.

• Use software such as iTunes to convert music to AAC format.
• iTunes is an example only. Vodafone does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
• For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.

iTunes is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc registered in the United States and other countries.

■Supported bit rate and sampling frequency are as follows.

Bit Rate (kbps)	20*1, 24*1, 28, 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96*2, 112*2, 128*2
Sampling Frequency (Hz)	16000, 22050, 24000, 32000, 44100, 48000

*1Supports stereo playback only when the sampling frequency is 16000 Hz.
*2Monaural playback is not supported.

Note ▶ Artist names for AAC files do not appear on 804SH.

Recording Music

Connect 804SH to audio sources supporting optical output to record music onto Memory Cards.

- 804SH encryption technology complies with Secure Digital Music Initiative (SDMI) for copyright protection. This technology prevents unauthorised copying or playback through data encryption and authentication.
- Analogue recording is not supported.

Required Cables for Recording Music

- Optical Conversion Cable (optional accessory)
- Optical digital connecting cable (sold separately)

Recording Time

Estimated Recording Time for Memory Card with no Files or Recordings:

Card Capacity	Bit Rate/Recording Time	
	96 kbps	128 kbps
64 MB	80 minutes	60 minutes

Bit rate measures audio compression rate or the quality of audio data recorded per second. Sound quality improves at higher rates.

Precautions before Recording

■Charge handset while recording.

- Recording stops when battery level falls too low. Always use AC Charger when recording to ensure a stable power supply.
- When battery is low (🔲 or 🔋), Music Player will not record. If battery runs low while recording, recording stops.

■Music is recorded onto Memory Card.

To start Music Player, insert a Memory Card formatted for 804SH (see **P.8-3**, **P.8-4**).

■Activate Offline Mode to prevent disruptions (see Steps 1 - 2 on P.7-7).

Incoming communications may disrupt recording or damage outputs of audio sources. (To place calls or send mail, stop recording and cancel Offline Mode.)

■Do not remove Memory Card while recording.

Doing so may damage the card or result in lost files.

Note ▶ • Under copyright law, duplicated material is limited to private use. Unauthorised reproduction or use is prohibited.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recordings.
- Music recorded onto Memory Card cannot be recopied to other media digitally.

Recording Window Indicators
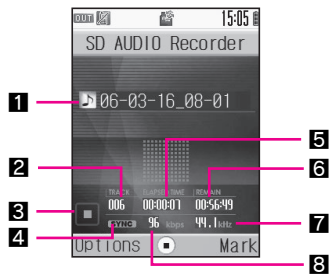
1 Title
2 Track Number
3 Status
  ●: Recording, ■: Stopped
4 Synch Recording (see P.7-8)
  • Synch Recording On
5 Elapsed Time
6 Remaining Recording Time
  • Reduces after each recording
7 Sampling Frequency (see P.7-6)
8 Bit Rate (see P.7-8)

Track Bookmarks

Add Bookmarks to music in Playlist to divide it into tracks for Repeat or Random Play. Track Bookmarks are created when a period of silence is detected between music files.

• When recording from CD/MD players, etc., track numbers remain the same as the original.
• If Music Player does not detect a period of silence, recorded music files are all combined and saved as a single track.
• When Synch Recording is *On*, recording pauses after a period of silence. Recording resumes when sound (next music) is detected.
  ■ When Synch Recording is *On*, recording stops after 15 seconds of pause.
• Brief sound dropouts occur when Track Bookmarks are created.
• Track Bookmarks may not be created automatically depending on the connected audio source. In this case, divide music into tracks manually (see Step 4 on **P.7-7**).

Note ▶ Recording may result in silence or a single music file with a low volume level if the music consists of long periods of silence or sustained low volume level.

Sampling Frequency

Sampling frequency is the number of times an audio signal is measured (sampled) per second, expressed in kilohertz (kHz). Similar to bit rate, higher rates translate into better sound quality. Sampling frequency is automatically set to 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48kHz according to the recording method or audio source.

When recording from DVD players, cancel DTS.

Note ▶ Recording results may not be satisfactory depending on the signal format.

Connecting to Audio Sources

Connection Precautions

Connect Optical Conversion Cable with an optical digital connecting cable, then to 804SH gently.
Disconnect Optical Conversion Cable gently by holding the plug and handset.

Do not use excessive force when connecting/disconnecting cables; doing so may damage cable, Mini Plug or Headphone/Optical Digital Line In Connector.

Use specified Optical Conversion Cable only.

Non-specified cables may not function properly and damage may result.

Cable Connections

Use Optical Digital Audio Toslink-Mini or Mini-Mini Cables (sold separately) with Optical Conversion Cable to connect audio sources to 804SH.

- Use Optical Conversion Cable only for recording music.
- Optical Conversion Cable is designed exclusively for 804SH and other specified Vodafone handsets. Do not use for other devices to prevent damage or malfunction.

OPTICAL OUT To Mini Plug Jack
Optical Mini Plug (3.5 mm)
Optical Digital Connecting Cable
Optical Digital Connecting Cable
Optical Conversion Cable (Plug)
Optical Digital Line In Connector
DIGITAL OUT To Rectangular (Toslink) Plug Jack
AC 100V
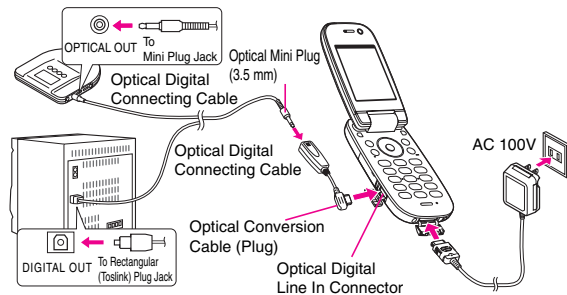
Recording

- Most operations are described with Synch Recording active.
- Read the precautions on **P.7-4** before recording.
- To listen to music while recording, adjust Monitor Level before recording (see **P.7-8**).
- Prepare an audio source and pause playback at the beginning of music.

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Music*

1 Select *SD AUDIO Recorder* and press ⦿

Receive calls during recording? appears.

- To prevent disruption by calls, choose ⦿ No in Step 2 to activate Offline Mode (see **P.2-19**).
- If Offline Mode is already active, skip ahead to Step 3.
- *SD AUDIO Recorder* can only be selected when a Memory Card is inserted.

2 Press ⦿ No

Recording window opens.

- Customise settings before recording (see **P.7-8** "Recording Settings").
  ■ To accept incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording, press ✉ Yes .

3 Press ⦿

Handset is ready for Synch Recording (see **P.7-8**).

■ When Synch Recording is *Off*, press ⦿ again ➡ Start playback

4 Start playback

Recording starts automatically when handset detects sound.

■ To create Track Bookmarks (see **P.7-5**) manually, press ⦿ Mark while recording.

5 To stop recording, stop playback on the audio source

Recording pauses, then stops after 15 seconds.

- If ⦿ No was pressed in Step 2, Offline Mode is cancelled after recording ends.

■ When Synch Recording is *Off*, press ⦿ to stop recording.

Note ▶ • Do not remove Memory Card or battery while recording. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Do not touch cables or plugs while recording. May cause noise or skipping.
- When recording from PCs or BS/CS digital tuners, recording level may decrease.
- Unchecked files recorded with J-SH51/J-SH52 will be deleted when the Memory Card is used for 804SH Music Player.

Tip ▶
- Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Music Player stops/closes.
- Recorded music is saved by date and time by default.

Recording Settings

Follow these steps after Step 2 on **P.7-7**.

Monitor Level	Set volume level to listen to music while recording

Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Monitor Level* ➡ Press ◉ DefaultLevel 3
➡ Use ✛ to adjust level ➡ Press ◉

Synch Recording	Start recording automatically when playback starts on audio sources

Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Synch Recording* ➡ Press ◉ DefaultOn
➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ◉

Bit Rate	Select a bit rate (see **P.7-4** "Recording Time")

Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Bit Rate* ➡ Press ◉ ➡ DefaultNormal (96 kbps)
Select *Normal* (96 kbps) or *High-quality* (128 kbps)
➡ Press ◉

- Sound quality is better at 128 kbps. However, recording time shortens as more space is required in memory.

Auto Mark Level	Select sensitivity to detect silence for creating Track Bookmarks

Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Auto Mark Level* ➡ Press ◉ Default-41dB
➡ Select *-41dB* or *-59dB* ➡ Press ◉

- Select *-59dB* for soft music to prevent unintended Track Bookmark creation.

Playing Music

Play music on Memory Card.
- Use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones (see **P.7-10**) to listen to music without bothering others.
- Alternatively, use handset speaker.

Right

Left

LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones
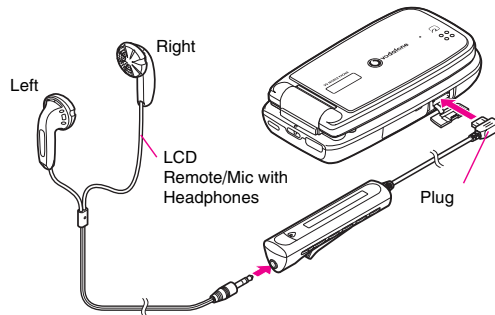
Plug

Precautions before Playing Music

- Music Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Music may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Grasp the plug when connecting or disconnecting LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones. Do not bend the plug to avoid damaging the cord or Headphone Connector.
- Use only the specified accessories (LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones, etc.). Other devices may not function properly and cause damage to Headphone Connector.
- When battery is low (☐ or ▯), Music Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Music Player shuts off.

Tip ▶ • To answer calls during playback with LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones, press Call Button (📞/📞) for 1+ seconds.
  • Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in speaker sound.
  • Large files may take longer to open. My Music and Playlists may take longer to open if large files are saved.

Playback Window Indicators
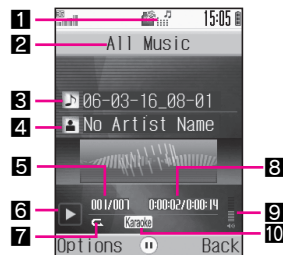
1 **Playback in Progress**
2 **Playlist Name**
3 **Title**
4 **Artist Name**
   • *No Artist Name* appears if not available.
5 **Track Number**
6 **Status**
   ▶: Playing, ▮▮: Paused, ▶▶: Fast Forwarding,
   ◀◀: Fast Rewinding
7 **Playback Pattern (see P.7-12)**
   ⊏1: Repeat, ⊏: Repeat All, ⟋⟍: Random
   • Indicator does not appear for Normal.
8 **Elapsed Time**
9 **Volume**
10 **Tone Control (see P.7-12)**
   ▥▥▥ : Bass, «B»: Surround, «B»: Surround Bass
   Karaoke: Karaoke
   • Indicator does not appear for Normal.

LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones

■Key Assignments
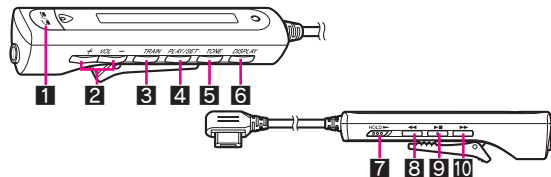
1 Call Button (📞/📵)

Press to place or answer calls (see **P.2-20**).

2 VOL+/VOL- Key

Press to adjust volume.

3 TRAIN Key

Press to limit maximum volume level to 13.

4 PLAY/SET Key

Press to toggle Playback Pattern (see **P.7-12**).

5 TONE Key

Press to toggle Tone Control (see **P.7-12**).

6 DISPLAY Key

Press to toggle Information view.

7 HOLD Key

Slide towards ► (orange mark appears) to disable key press.

8 Fast Rewind Key (◄◄)

Press to replay or fast rewind (see **P.7-11**).

9 Play/Stop Key (►■)

Press to play or stop music (see **P.7-11**).

10 Fast Forward Key (►►)

Skip or fast forward (see **P.7-11**).

■LCD Indicators
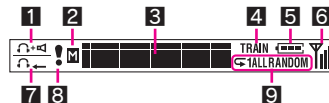
1 Ringtone Output

🎧+🔊 appears at any time.

2 Manner Mode Active (see P.2-18)

3 Information

Title/artist name, elapsed time, Tone Control and current date/time appear.

4 TRAIN Active (see left)

5 Battery Level

6 Signal Strength

*Nothing appears when handset is out-of-range or in Offline Mode.

7 Incoming Call Priority

🎧← appears at any time.

8 Incoming Communications

Appears for missed incoming communications.

9 Playback Pattern (see P.7-12)

↻1: Repeat, ↻ ALL: Repeat All, RANDOM: Random

• Indicator does not appear for Normal.

Playback

1 Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO* and press ●

■ To play the last played file from where it stopped, select *Last Played Music* ➡ Press ●

My Music

2 Select a Playlist and press ●

■ To search files, press 🖃 **Options** ➡ Select *Search* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ Press ●
  ■ When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.
■ To sort files, press 🖃 **Options** ➡ Select *Sort* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a sort option ➡ Press ●
  ■ Files in SD AUDIO cannot be sorted.
■ To check file/Playlist properties, select a file or Playlist ➡ Press 🖃 **Options** ➡ Select *Information* ➡ Press ● (Press ⓠ to scroll down.)
  ■ Press ⓞ **Back** twice to return.
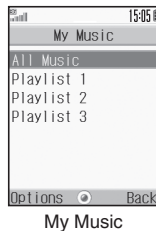
3 Select a file and press ●

Playback window opens and playback starts.
● Playback stops after the last file when Playback Pattern is set to *Normal* (see **P.7-12**).
■ To pause playback, press ●.
■ Use ⓢ (up) or ⓠ (down) to adjust volume.
  ■ The setting remains until you change it.

Playback Operations

	Handset	LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones
Replay	Press ⓞ	Press ◀◀
	Press repeatedly to play previous files.[1]	
Skip Forward	Press ⓞ[2]	Press ▶▶[2]
Fast Forward	Press and hold ⓞ	Press and hold ▶▶
	Release for playback.	
Fast Reverse	Press and hold ⓞ	Press and hold ◀◀
	Release for playback.	
Pause	Press ●	Press ▶■
	Press again to resume playback.	
Mute	Press ⓠ (Long Press)	Press **VOL-** (Long Press)
	Press ⓢ or **VOL+** to play sound.	

[1]In Random Play, ⓞ or ◀◀ only replays the current file.
[2]Not available for the last file when Playback Pattern is set to *Normal*.

Tip ▶ ● Press 🕾 to create mail messages and use Phone Book, etc. during playback; however, some functions are not available.
● *Stop music?* appears when 🕾 is pressed in Standby. Press 🖃 **Yes** or ⓞ **No**.

7

Media Player

Playback Settings

Tone Control — Increase bass for dynamic sound or create a surround field

Default Normal

Select *Tone Control* ➡ Press ⚫ ➡ Select an effect ➡ Press ⚫

Normal	No sound effects
Bass	Bass is increased
Surround	Surround effect
Surround Bass	Surround effect with increased bass
Karaoke	Vocals are softened

Playback Pattern — Play files repeatedly or play them in random order

Default Normal

Select *Playback Pattern* ➡ Press ⚫ ➡ Select a pattern ➡ Press ⚫

Normal	Play in order until the last file ends
Repeat	Repeat one file
Repeat All	Repeat all files in the current Playlist
Random	Play files in the current Playlist in random order

Playing Video

Play video files recorded with mobile camera or downloaded via Web.

- Sounds play from handset speaker.
- Alternatively, use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones to listen (see **P.7-8**).

Playback Window Indicators
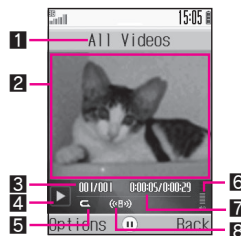
1 Playlist Name

2 Video Image/Subtitles

3 Clip Number

4 Status

  ▶: Playing, ⏸: Paused, ▷: Advancing Frame,

  ▶▷: Fast Forwarding, ◁◀: Fast Rewinding

5 Playback Pattern (see P.7-14)

  • Indicators are the same as those for Music Player (see **P.7-9**).

6 Volume

7 Elapsed Time

8 Sound Settings (seeP.7-14)

  ▦ : Bass, ⟪ᴮ⟫: Surround, ⟪ᴮ⟫: Surround + Bass

Playback

Play video on Video Player. To change playback settings, see **P.7-14**. To add subtitles, see **P.7-16**.

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Videos*

1 Select *My Videos* or *SD VIDEO* and press ⦿
- For *SD VIDEO*, skip ahead to Step 4.
- ■ To play the last played file from where it stopped, select *Last Played Video* ➡ Press ⦿

2 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* and press ⦿

3 Select a Playlist and press ⦿
- ■ To search files, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Search* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter search text ➡ Press ⦿
  - ■ When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.
- ■ To sort files, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Sort* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a sort option ➡ Press ⦿
  - ■ Files in SD VIDEO cannot be sorted.
- ■ To check file/Playlist properties, select a file or Playlist ➡ Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Information* ➡ Press ⦿ (Press ⦶ to scroll down.)
  - ■ Press ⊜ **OK** to return.

All Videos

🎬	video0001 No Author	0:00:50
🎬	video0002 No Author	0:00:25
🎬	video0003 No Author	0:00:32
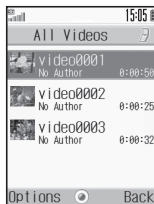
Options ⦿ Back

All Videos

4 Select a file and press ⦿

Playback window opens and playback starts.
- Playback stops after the last file when Playback Pattern is set to *Normal* (see **P.7-14**).
- ■ To change playback settings while playing or paused, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ See **P.7-14**
- ■ To edit video, see **P.7-15**.
- ■ To pause playback, press ⦿.
  - ■ For frame advance, pause playback and press ⦶ for 1+ seconds.
- ■ Use ⦵ (up) or ⦶ (down) to adjust volume.
  - ■ The setting remains until you change it.
- ■ To toggle Display Size (see **P.7-14**), press ⓪ during playback.
  - ■ Subtitles appear only in Original Size.
- ■ Playback Operations: see **P.7-11**

Tip ▶ Video recorded on other devices may appear rotated.

Playback Settings

Playback Pattern is available for files in My Videos only.

Playback Pattern	Play files repeatedly or in random order

Default Normal

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Videos* ➡ *Settings*

Select *Playback Pattern* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select a pattern ➡ Press ⬤

Normal	Play in order until the last file ends
Repeat	Repeat one file
Repeat All	Repeat all files in the current Playlist
Random	Play files in the current Playlist in random order

Backlight	Select a Backlight status for playback

Default Always On

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Videos* ➡ *Settings*

Select *Backlight* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select a pattern ➡ Press ⬤

Always On	Backlight remains on during playback
Always Off	Backlight remains off during playback
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (see **P.10-7**)

Display Size	Change playback size

Default Enlarge

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Videos* ➡ *Settings*

Select *Display Size* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Original Size*, *Enlarge* or *Full Screen* ➡ Press ⬤

- Alternatively, press ⓪ during playback to toggle Display Size as follows: Full Screen (no indicators) → Full Screen (with indicators) → Original Size → Enlarge
  - Press ⓪ in paused Full Screen view to show or hide indicators.

Sound Settings	Select Surround or Bass; use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones for a more pleasant sound experience

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Videos* ➡ *Settings* ➡ *Sound Settings*

Select *Surround* or *Bass* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ⬤

Editing Video

QVGA (W 240 x H 320 dots) video cannot be edited.

Crop	**Select Two Points**	Save portion between two points as a new file
	Delete Before	Save portion before selected point as a new file
	Delete After	Save portion after selected point as a new file
Subtitle		Add subtitles (text) to video

Note ▶ • Some files may not be edited.
• Edited video may not play properly if Memory Card is not formatted for 804SH.
• To save to Memory Card, a maximum of 300 KB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

Clipping Portions between Two Points

Follow these steps after Step 4 on **P.7-13**.

1 While paused or during playback, press ⓧ Options

2 Select *Edit* and press ⦿

3 Press ⓧ Yes
• Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.

4 Select *Crop* and press ⦿

5 Select *Select Two Points* and press ⦿
Video plays.
• Press ⦿ to pause/start video.

6 Press ⓧ Start at the start point
The start point is specified and playback resumes.

7 Press ⓧ End at the end point
The portion is saved.
• If video has ended before pressing ⓧ End , start over from Step 6.

Note ▶ Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

Cropping Video Clips

Delete the portion before or after the selected point to save the rest as a new file.

Follow these steps after Step 4 on **P.7-13**.

1 While paused or during playback, press ⊚ Options

2 Select *Edit* and press ●

3 Press ⊚ Yes
- Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.

4 Select *Crop* and press ●

5 Select *Delete Before* or *Delete After* and press ●
Video plays.

6 Press ● at approximate start point
- The portion before or after the selected point will be deleted.
- To adjust start point, press ● to start/pause video.
■ To cancel, press ⊙ Back.

7 Press ⊚ Cut
The remaining portion is saved as a new file.

Note ▶ Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

Adding Subtitles

Set subtitles to appear while playing video. Select timing, add effects, etc.

Entering Text

After entry, set timing and time period for subtitles.
- Save up to ten subtitles of up to 48 single-byte alphanumerics per entry.
- Follow these steps after Step 4 on **P.7-13**.

1 While paused or during playback, press ⊚ Options

2 Select *Edit* and press ●

3 Press ⊚ Yes
- Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.

4 Select *Subtitle* and press ●

5 Select *Edit Subtitle* and press ●
■ To delete saved subtitles, select *Delete All Subtitle* ➡ Press ●
➡ Press ⊚ Yes

6 Select a number and press ●

7 Enter text and press ●
- Press ● to pause/play video.

8 Press 🖂 **Start** at the start point

9 Press 🖂 **End** at the end **point**

Edit Subtitle menu returns.

- If video has ended before pressing 🖂 **End**, start over from Step 8.
- To complete without changing display settings or adding effects, skip ahead to Step 11.

  ▢ To edit text, select **Edit Text** ➡ Press ● ➡ Edit text ➡ Press ●
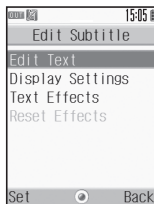
Edit Subtitle Menu

10 Change display settings/add effects

▢ To change display settings, select **Display Settings** ➡ Press ● ➡ See right

▢ To add effects, select **Text Effects** ➡ Press ● ➡ See **P.7-18**

▢ To cancel effects, select **Reset Effects** ➡ Press ● ➡ Press 🖂 **Yes**

11 After completing all the settings, press 🖂 **Set**

- To add more, repeat Steps 6 - 11.

  ▢ To edit saved subtitles, select one ➡ Press ● ➡ Select **Edit** ➡ Press ● ➡ Select **Edit Text** ➡ Press ● ➡ Start over from Step 7

  ▢ To delete saved subtitles, select one ➡ Press ● ➡ Select **Delete** ➡ Press ●

12 Press 🖂 **End**

13 Select **Overwrite** or **Create New** and press ●

Display Settings

Follow these steps after Step 10 on the right.

Duration Set timing and time period for subtitles

Select *Duration* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press 🖂 Start at the start point ➡ Press 🖂 End at the end point

  ▢ When finished, press ⊙ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on the left

Display Position Set position for subtitles to appear

Select *Display Position* ➡ Press ● ➡ Use ✛ to select a position ➡ Press ●

  ▢ When finished, press ⊙ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on the left

Font Size Change font size of subtitles

Default Handset (20 x 20)

Select *Font Size* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Handset (20 x 20)* or *PC (12 x 12)* ➡ Press ●

  ▢ When finished, press ⊙ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on the left

7-17

Scrolling	Select a direction and visual effect for subtitle scroll

Default Direction: Left to Right, Effect: Frame In

Scroll Direction

Select *Scrolling* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Direction* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Left to Right* or *Right to Left* ➡ Press ⬤

  ■ When finished, press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on **P.7-17**

Scroll Effects

Select *Scrolling* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Effect* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select an effect ➡ Press ⬤

Frame In	Subtitle comes in from an end, then disappears in the centre
Frame Out	Subtitle appears in the centre and scrolls out
Rolling	Subtitle scrolls from end to end

  ■ When finished, press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on **P.7-17**

On-Screen Time

Select *Scrolling* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *On-Screen Time* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter time ➡ Press ⬤

  ■ When finished, press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on **P.7-17**

Background Colour	Select from seven background colours

Default Black

Select *Background Colour* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select a colour ➡ Press ⬤

  ■ When finished, press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on **P.7-17**

Adding Text Effects

• Up to two effects can be applied per entry.
• Follow these steps after Step 10 on **P.7-17**.

Font Colour	Change font colours

Default White

Changing Colour of Entire Text

Select *Font Colour* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *All* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select a colour ➡ Press ⬤

  ■ When finished, press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on **P.7-17**

Changing Colour of Portion

Select *Font Colour* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Select Text* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Use ✽ to select the first character of text ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Use ✽ to select the end of text ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select a colour ➡ Press ⬤

  ■ When finished, press ⊚ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on **P.7-17**

Select *Highlight* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Use ⦿ to select the first character of text ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Use ⦿ to select the end of text ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a colour ➡ Press ⦿

■ When finished, press ⦿ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on **P.7-17**

Select *Blink* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Use ⦿ to select the first character of text ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Use ⦿ to select the end of text ➡ Press ⦿

■ When finished, press ⦿ **Back** ➡ Perform from Step 11 on **P.7-17**

Managing Video & Music Files

Organise video/music files on handset in My Videos and My Music. All files are saved in *All Videos* or *All Music*. Use Playlists to organise them.

All Videos/All Music	Playlist
Classic_music_01	→ Classic_music_01
Classic_music_02	→ Pops_music_01
Classic_music_03	→ Rock_music_02
…	→ Rock_music_03
Pops_music_01	
Pops_music_02	Selected Files
Pops_music_03	
…	
Rock_music_01	
Rock_music_02	
Rock_music_03	
…	

All Files
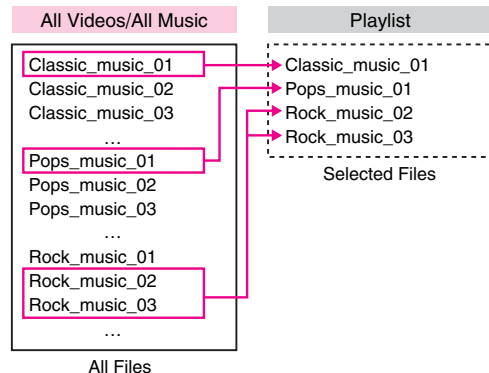
- Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Videos or All Music.
- Three Playlists are saved by default. To create new Playlists, see **P.7-20**.
- To save to Memory Card, a maximum of 300 KB (video) or 96 KB (music) of free memory is required in addition to the file size.
- Use **Music Manager** on the supplied Utility Software CD-ROM to create Playlists and organise music files via PCs.

Adding New Playlist

Create up to 99 Playlists in *My Videos*, *My Music* and *SD AUDIO* each.

- Playlists cannot be added into *SD VIDEO*.
- *Playlist 1* to *Playlist 3* are saved in My Videos and My Music by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player*

1 *Video Playlists*
  1 Select *Videos* and press ●
  2 Select *My Videos* and press ●
  3 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*

Music Playlists
  1 Select *Music* and press ●
  2 Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO*

2 Press ●
  ▢ To delete Playlists, select one ➡ Press
  ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete Playlist* ➡
  Press ● ➡ Press ⊜ **Yes**
  ▢ To rename Playlists, select one ➡
  Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Edit List
  Title* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter new name
  ➡ Press ●

[Screen: 15:05 / Video Playlist / All Videos / Playlist 1 / Playlist 2 / Playlist 3 / Options ● Back]
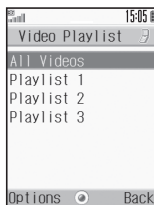
My Videos

3 Press ⊜ **Options**

4 Select *Add New Playlist* and press ●

5 Enter name and press ●

Adding Files to Playlists

Add files to Playlists from *All Videos* or *All Music*.

- Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Videos or All Music.
- Files in *SD VIDEO* cannot be added to Playlists.

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player*

1 *Adding Video Files*
  1 Select *Videos* and press ●
  2 Select *My Videos* and press ●
  3 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*.

Adding Music Files
  1 Select *Music* and press ●
  2 Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO*

2 Press ●
  ▢ To delete saved files, select a Playlist ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a
  file ➡ Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡
  Press ⊜ **Yes**
  ▢ To move files within a list, select a Playlist ➡ Press ● ➡
  Select a file ➡ Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Change Order* ➡
  Press ● ➡ Use ⟨⟩ to move file ➡ Press ●

3 Select *All Videos* or *All Music* and press ●

4 Select a file and press ⊜ **Options**

5 Select *Add to Playlist* and press ●

6 Select a Playlist and press ●
File is added to the end of the Playlist.

Editing SD AUDIO Files

Edit titles and artist names of files in SD AUDIO.

> **Main Menu** ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Music* ➡ *SD AUDIO*

1 Select a Playlist and press ●

2 Select a file and press ⊠ Options

3 Select *Edit* and press ●

4 *Editing Titles*

■ Select *Title* and press ●
② Enter title and press ●

Editing Artist Name

■ Select *Artist* and press ●
② Enter name and press ●

Deleting Files in SD VIDEO & SD AUDIO

Delete video files in SD VIDEO and music files in *All Music*
of SD AUDIO.
Source files will be deleted.

Deleting Video Files

> **Main Menu** ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Videos* ➡ *SD VIDEO*

1 Select a file and press ⊠ Options

2 Select *Delete* and press ●

3 Press ⊠ Yes

Deleting Music Files

> **Main Menu** ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Music* ➡ *SD AUDIO* ➡ *All Music*

1 Select a file and press ⊠ Options

2 Select *Delete Track* and press ●

3 Press ⊠ Yes

Deleting Files in My Videos/My Music

■ Delete files in All Videos and All Music from *Videos* and
Sounds & Ringtones in Data Folder respectively (see
P.9-15).

Memory Card

Before Use

804SH is compatible with miniSD™ Memory Card;

- miniSD™ Memory Card is not included in this package. Purchase miniSD™ Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.
- Format a new miniSD™ Memory Card for use with 804SH (see **P.8-4**).
- To learn how to save a particular file to Memory Card, refer to that section of the manual.

Memory Card Memory Status

■ **Press** ⓔ ➡ **Select** *Data Folder* ➡ **Press** ⓔ ➡ **Select** *Memory Status* ➡ **Press** ⓔ ➡ **Select** *Memory Card* ➡ **Press** ⓔ

- A portion of Memory Card is reserved for storing copyright information, etc.

Precautions

- To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended miniSD™ Memory Card sizes.
- Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.

- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Use an oil-based felt pen to write on Memory Card. Using a pencil or ballpoint pen may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Do not expose Memory Card to direct sunlight or excessive heat (e.g. inside vehicles, etc.).
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust or high humidity.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

Note ▶
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- miniSD™ Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

Tip ▶ The manufacturer recommends the use of 32, 64, 128, 256 or 512 MB cards.

Inserting & Removing Memory Card

Inserting

Turn handset power off.

1 Open cover
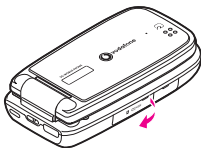
2 With logo side down, insert card until it clicks

Logo Side Down
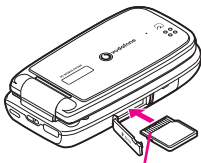
3 Close cover
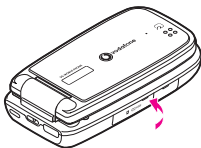
Note ▶ Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot; may damage handset/card.

Tip ▶ Insert a Memory Card and turn handset power on. Standby appears. Memory Card load times vary depending on card size and the amount of information saved.

Removing

Turn handset power off.

1 Open cover and gently push down on card
- With a light push, the card pops out.

2 Remove card
- Using the notch on its edge, pull the card straight out

3 Close cover
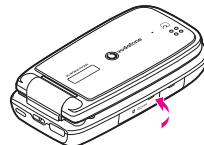
■**Closing Cover**
1 Slide cover as shown
2 Push in cover until it clicks

miniSD

miniSD

Note ▶ Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.

8 Memory Card

Format Card

When using a new miniSD™ Memory Card, format it on 804SH for use with 804SH before trying to save files, etc.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⊙)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *Format Card*

1 Press ✉ Yes

Offline Mode is set.
■ When handset is connected to the Network, press ●.

2 Enter Handset Code

3 Press ●

4 Press ✉ Yes

■ To cancel, press ⊙ No.

Note ▶ • Before formatting a Memory Card, make sure there is no important information saved on the card. Format Card deletes all files from Memory Card.
• Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting.
• An improperly formatted Memory Card may not function as it should with 804SH.

Backup & Restore

Back-up entries to Memory Card by function, and restore to handset whenever necessary. All entries of the following functions can be transferred at once:
■ Phone Book   ■ Calendar   ■ Tasks
■ Text Templates   ■ Bookmarks
All contents are copied to Memory Card as a single file. (File name is the date of transfer.)

Precautions

• Backup or Restore is not available when battery is low.
• When a V-application is paused, *Application suspended. End application?* appears. Press ✉ Yes to start Backup or Restore.
• When handset or Memory Card memory is low, entries may not transfer correctly.
• Some items may not be transferable. Some backup files may not be usable on other Vodafone handsets, PCs or other devices.
• Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
• Backup file contents can only be accessed when restored to handset.
• Copy handset entries as backups, share information between miniSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or transfer entries to a newly purchased handset.

Handset to Memory Card

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (☺)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ *Backup*

1 Enter Handset Code and press ●

2 Press ☺ Yes

Offline Mode is set.
■ When handset is connected to the Network, press ●.

3 Select an item and press ●

■ *Save phone book pictures as well?* appears for *Select All* or *Phone Book*. Press ☺ Yes or ⊙ No
■ To cancel, press ⊙ Cancel.

Memory Card to Handset

Handset data is overwritten after restoring.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (☺)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ *Restore*

1 Enter Handset Code and press ●

2 Press ☺ Yes

Offline Mode is set.
■ When handset is connected to the Network, press ●.

3 Select an item and press ●

• Some items may not be selected.

4 Select a file and press ●

• If there is more than one file, check the date of transfer to select.

Example: *060315XX* indicates the file was transferred on 15 March 2006. (XX: 00 - 99 or aa - zz)

• For *Select All*, repeat Step 4 for each item.
■ To delete files on Memory Card, select one ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☺ Yes

5 Press ☺ Yes

■ To cancel, press ⊙ Cancel.

Tip ▶ For Tasks, due dates that cannot be set on 804SH are overwritten with the restored date and time.

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is a standard specification for requesting prints from digital cameras. Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

- DPOF does not support images obtained via Web or MMS.
- If Memory Card capacity becomes insufficient while in use operation, a warning message appears. Delete files and try.
- For printing procedures, see the printer manual.

Selecting Images & Prints

To specify the same number of copies for all DCF images on Memory Card, see **P.8-7**.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⊘)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *DPOF* ➡ *Set Each Copy*

1 Select a folder and press ●

Thumbnails appear.

2 Use ✪ to select an image and press ⊚ **Count**

■ To open images, select one ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ⊚ **Back** to return.

3 Enter a number of copies to print (00 - 99) and press ●

■ Press ⊚ **Back** to return.
■ To cancel, enter *00* ➡ Press ●

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other images

5 Press ⊚ **OK**

Note ▶
- DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on 804SH.
- Some settings may not be supported depending on the printer or printing services.
- Process may take a while if print settings are made for many images.
- If image files are deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, print settings change. Perform Reset Settings (see **P.8-7**) and start over with settings.

Print Settings

Number of Copies	Apply a number to all DCF images to print the same number of copies

<div align="right">Default 00 Copy</div>

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⊙)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *DPOF* ➡ *Settings for All* ➡ *Number of Copies*

Enter a number (01 - 99) ➡ **Press ⦿**

Add Date	Add dates to prints

<div align="right">Default Off</div>

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⊙)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *DPOF* ➡ *Settings for All* ➡ *Add Date*

Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ **Press ⦿**

Index Print	Create Index Print (a print with thumbnails)

<div align="right">Default Off</div>

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⊙)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *DPOF* ➡ *Settings for All* ➡ *Index Print*

Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ **Press ⦿**

Check Print Setting	View current print settings

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⊙)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *DPOF* ➡ *Settings for All*

Select *Check Print Setting* ➡ **Press ⦿**
- *※※※* may appear for *Copies* and *Total Copies*.

Reset Settings	Reset DPOF settings

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⊙)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *DPOF* ➡ *Settings for All*

Select *Reset Settings* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Press ⊚** **Yes**

Additional Function

SD Local Contents	Open HTML files on Memory Card to access linked Memory Card files or Mobile Internet sites

■ Available only when HTML files are saved on Memory Card.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⊙)* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ *SD Local Contents*

Select a title ➡ **Press ⦿**
- SD Local Contents are saved in PRIVATE/VODAFONE/Local Contents folder when viewed on PCs.

Managing Files (Data Folder)

Data Folder

804SH files are organised in folders by file format.

```
Data Folder
  Pictures ────────── Still Images
                      Large Still Images on Memory Card
  DCIM ─────────────
  Sounds&Ringtones ── Downloaded Melodies and other
                      Sound Files
  Custom Screens ──── Shortcut to Custom Screens
                      (see P.10-4)
  V-appli ─────────── Shortcut to V-applications (see
                      P.16-2)
  IC-appli ────────── Shortcut to IC-appli (see P.17-3)
  Videos ──────────── Video Images
  Text Templates ──── Created Text Templates (see P.9-14)
  Other Documents ─── Other Files such as vFiles,
                      Dictionary Files, etc.
```

Access the corresponding Vodafone Web Menu directly
from *Pictures*, *Sounds&Ringtones*, *Custom Screens*,
V-appli, *IC-appli* and *Videos*.

Tip ▶ Exchange files via Bluetooth (see **P.10-20**) or infrared
(see **P.10-28**) with compatible Vodafone handsets.

Window Description

To open Data Folder from Standby,
follow these steps.

**Press ⊙ ➡ Select *Data Folder* ➡
Press ⊙**

```
┌─────────────────────┐
│ ⁵⁵⁰ᵢₗₗ        15:05 ▤│
│     Data Folder      │
│ ▤Pictures            │
│ ▥DCIM                │
│ ⊞Sounds&Ringtones    │
│ ▤Custom Screens      │
│ ▤V-appli             │
│ ▤IC-appli            │
│ ▤Videos             ▾│
│ Select   ⊙     Back  │
└─────────────────────┘
```
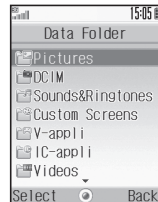
Memory Status

■ To check memory usage status, open Data Folder and follow
these steps.

**Select *Memory Status* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select
Phone Memory or *Memory Card* ➡ Press ⊙**

• Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset
performance may be affected when memory is full.

File List

In Data Folder, select a folder and press ⊙. File list appears.
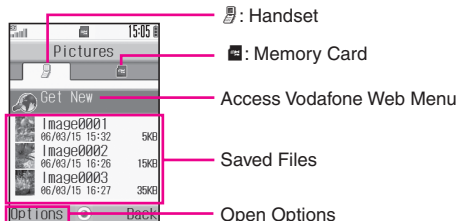
```
┌─────────────────────┐
│ ⁵⁵⁰ᵢₗₗ   ▤    15:05 ▤│       𝕝 : Handset
│     Pictures         │
│        𝕝     ▤       │       ▤ : Memory Card
│ ⊙ Get New            │       Access Vodafone Web Menu
│ ▦ Image0001          │
│   06/03/15 15:32  5KB │
│ ▦ Image0002          │       Saved Files
│   06/03/15 16:26 15KB │
│ ▦ Image0003          │
│   06/03/15 16:27 35KB │
│ Options  ⊙     Back  │       Open Options
└─────────────────────┘
            Pictures
```

List appearance may differ when Memory Card is not inserted.

Major Icons

■Still Image & Animation Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
🖼	JPEG (.jpg)	JPEG image
	PNG (.png)	PNG image
🖼NVA	E-Animation (NEVA files) (.nva)	Animation (may include sound)

■Video Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
🎞	MPEG-4 (.3gp)	3GPP video image
	MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp or .mp4)	3GPP video image

■Sound Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
🎵	SMAF (.mmf)	Melody via Web (may include images)
	Audio (.mp4)	Downloaded Chaku-Uta
	Voice (.amr)	Voice/sound recorded on Voice Recorder

Tip ▶ ⇒ appears for copyright protected files. ⇒ appears for files in the public domain.

Sorting Files

Sort by name, date, size or type. This setting applies to all folders except *Custom Screens*, *V-appli*, *IC-appli* and *Text Templates*.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press ●
- Select a folder other than Custom Screens, V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates.
- ▢ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select the sub folder ➡ Press ●
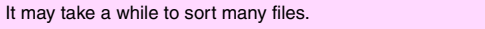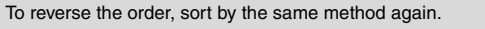
2 Press ✉ Options
- If *Get New* is highlighted in file list, skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select *Advanced* and press ●

4 Select *Sort* and press ●

5 Select a method and press ●

Note ▶ It may take a while to sort many files.

Tip ▶ To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.

9

Managing Files (Data Folder)

9-3

Opening Files

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press ●

File list appears.

■ Use ⊙ to switch between handset and Memory Card.

■ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press ●

2 Select a file and press ●

The content plays or appears.

■ Press ⑤ (up) or ⑨ (down) to adjust volume.

■ To switch sound file playback display, select a file ▶ Press ⊙ **Options** ▶ Select *Item Displayed* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *File Name* or *Title Preferred* (default) ▶ Press ●

■ To zoom in on still images/animations, press ⊙ **Options** ▶ Select *Zoom* ▶ Press ● (Repeat to zoom in more.)

■ Alternatively, for images in Pictures folder, press ● to zoom in. (Press repeatedly to zoom in more.)

■ After maximum zoom, image appears in standard scale.

■ To zoom out, press ⊙ **Options** ▶ Select *Zoom Out* ▶ Press ●

■ To view still images in full-screen, press ⊙ **Options** ▶ Select *Full Screen* ▶ Press ●

File List (Pictures)

3 Press ⟨CLEAR/BACK⟩ to return to file list

• Press ⟨CLEAR/BACK⟩ twice to return to file list from full-screen view.
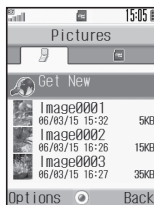
Slide Show

■ All images in Pictures or DCIM folder appear sequentially.

In file list, select a file ▶ Press ⊙ Options ▶ Select *Slide Show* ▶ Press ●

■ Press ● to stop.

Activating Mobile Camera

■ Open file list in Pictures, DCIM or Videos folder and follow these steps.

Press ⊙ Options ▶ Select *Take Picture* or *Record Video* ▶ Press ●

■ Mobile camera activates in Photo Camera mode from Pictures and DCIM folders, or in Video Camera mode from Videos folder.

■ If *Get New* is highlighted in file list, select a file first.

■ To capture still images, perform from Step 1 on **P.6-5**.

■ To record video, perform from Step 2 on **P.6-7**.

■ Mobile Camera can be activated from file list only when a file is saved.

Activating Voice Recorder

■ Open file list in Sounds & Ringtones folder and follow these steps.

Press ⊙ Options ▶ Select *Record Voice* ▶ Press ●

■ If *Get New* is highlighted in file list, select a file first.

■ To record voice/sounds, perform from Step 2 on **P.11-15**.

■ Voice Recorder can be activated from file list only when a file is saved.

Selecting Multiple Files

Select multiple files in a folder to move, copy or delete them all at the same time.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press ●
- Select a folder other than Custom Screens, V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates.
  ▢ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
  ➡ Press ●

2 Select a file and press ☺ Options

3 Select *Advanced* and press ●

4 Select *Multiple Select* and press ●

5 Select a file and press ●
  ☑ appears to the right of the file name.
  ▢ To uncheck, select a file with ☑ ➡ Press ●

6 Repeat Step 5 to select more
- Copy, move, or delete files.
  ▢ To check all, press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Select All* ➡ Press ●
  ▢ To uncheck all, press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Unselect All* ➡ Press ●

Properties

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press ●
- Select a folder other than Text Templates.
  ▢ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
  ➡ Press ●

2 Select a file and press ☺ Options

3 Select *Details* or *Information* and press ●
- Press ⓨ to scroll down.
- The following information appears:
  File name, type, size, last modified date, vendor, copy/forward protection and other restrictions (number of times to open, expiry term).
  ■ Available information vary by file.

SVG Files

804SH supports **SVG-T** (Scalable Vector Graphics-Tiny).
View graphics in SVG files, including tables and maps.
- For more information on SVG-T, visit *http://www.sharp.co.jp/j/* (Japanese only).
- Key Assignments:

Scroll	②🔅 (Down), ④🔅 (Right), ⑥🔅 (Left), ⑧🔅 (Up)
Zoom	①🔅 (Zoom Out), ③🔅 (Zoom In), ⑤🔅 (100%)
Rotate	⑦🔅 (Anticlockwise), ⑨🔅 (Clockwise)
Key Action Mode	⓪🔅

Tip ▶ Some features may not be available depending on the SVG file.

MMS Mail Attachments

Attach files to MMS Mail from Data Folder.
• Use Text Templates to paste the saved text into message text.
• Files in Custom Screens folder cannot be attached.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ▶ *Open a folder*

1 Select a file and press ⓐ Options

2 Select *Send* and press ⓞ
■ For files in Text Templates folder, select *Send Template* ▶ Press ⓞ ▶ Skip ahead to Step 4

3 Select *As Message* and press ⓞ
■ For large JPEG images, select attachment size ▶ Press ⓞ

4 Complete other fields and send MMS Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-6)

Printing Images

Connect 804SH to a printer via Bluetooth and print JPEG/PNG images.
• Use a Bluetooth-compatible printer.
• Activate Bluetooth on the printer.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select *Pictures*, *DCIM* or *Other Documents* and press ⓞ

2 Select a still image and press ⓐ Options

3 Select *Print* and press ⓞ

4 Select *Via Bluetooth* and press ⓞ
Device search starts.

5 Select a device and press ⓞ
Printing starts.
■ When requested, enter passcode ▶ Press ⓞ
■ When transmission is in progress, press ⓐ Yes .
• When printing completes, printer stops automatically.
■ To cancel, press ⓞ Cancel ▶ Press ⓐ OK

Note ▶ • Images may not be printed correctly depending on the file or printer status.
• Copy protected files cannot be printed even if printing rights are granted.

Using Files

Use Data Folder files as Wallpaper, Phone Book Picture, Ringtone and Ringvideo.

- *Set as Wallpaper*, *Add to Ph.Book*, *as Ring Video* and *Set as Ringtone* can be selected only for compatible files.
- Some files may not be used depending on the size.

Note ▶ Some copyright protected files (⇽ or ⇴) cannot be used even if *Set as Wallpaper*, *Add to Ph.Book* or *as Ring Video* appears.

Wallpaper

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 **Select *Pictures* or *Other Documents* and press ⚫**

2 **Select a file and press ☺ Options**

3 **Select *Set as Wallpaper* and press ⚫**

4 **Press ⚫**
Wallpaper is set.

Saving to Phone Book

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 **Select *Pictures*, *Sounds&Ringtones* or *Videos* and press ⚫**

2 **Select a file and press ☺ Options**

3 **Select *Add to Ph.Book* and press ⚫**
For more, perform Step 4 in "Saving from Dialled Numbers/Received Calls" on **P.4-7**.

Ringvideo & Ringtone

Assign video or sound file as Ringvideo or Ringtone for Voice Calls. Files on Memory Card are not supported.

Ringvideo

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Videos*

1 **Select a file and press ☺ Options**

2 **Select *as Ring Video* and press ⚫**

Ringtone

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Sounds&Ringtones*

1 **Select a file and press ☺ Options**

2 **Select *Set as Ringtone* and press ⚫**

Editing Still Images

Changing Image Size

Resize images in Pictures folder to use for Wallpaper, Alarm, etc.

- Alternatively, crop image for size or enlarge/reduce portions. (File size changes when images are resized.)
- Images can only be resized when *Picture Editor* appears.

Resize to Preset Size

Main Menu	▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file* ➡ *Options (□)* ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ *Resize*

1 Select from *To Wallpaper* to *Alarm* and press ●

A rectangle appears on the image (except for *To Wallpaper* and *Power On/Off*).

To Wallpaper	W 240 x H 320 dots
Power On/Off	W 240 x H 320 dots
For Incoming Call	W 176 x H 144 dots
Alarm	W 240 x H 104 dots
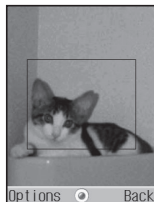
For Incoming Call

2 Use ⊙ to specify display area

- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
- ☐ To start over from selecting preset size, press ⊙ **Back** .

3 Press ●

4 Press ⊙ Save

5 Enter name and press ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Cropping Images

Main Menu	▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file* ➡ *Options (□)* ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ *Resize*

1 Select *Cut* and press ●

2 Use ⊙ to move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop and press ●

3 Use ⊙ to move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop and press ●

- ☐ To cancel, press ⊙ **Back** ➡ Start over from Step 1
- ☐ To enlarge/reduce, press □ **Options** ➡ Select *Resize* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⑦ (enlarge) or ⑨ (reduce)

4 Use ⊙ to specify display area

- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
- ☐ To cancel, press ⊙ **Back** .

5 Press ●

6 Press ⊙ Save

7 Enter name and press ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Visual Effects (Retouch)

Dress up images with pre-loaded visual effects.
Apply to W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
including Continuous Shoot images.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file* ➡
Options (☺) ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ *Retouch*

1 Select an effect and press ●

- Retouch Effects:

Sepia	Renders image in sepia tone
Sparkling	Adds sparkling effect to bright portions of image
Ripples	Superimposes widening rings over image
Tile	Adds a brick frame around image
Emboss	Renders image in black and white relief
Oil Painting	Renders image as a blurred image
Clear Frame	Adds a transparent 3D frame around image
Round Frame	Adds a round, opaque frosting around image
Soft Frame	Adds a soft, opaque edged frame around image
Zigzag Frame	Adds a jagged edged frame around image

☐ To start over, press ☺ Back .

2 Press ●

3 Press ☺ Save

4 Enter name and press ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Note ▶ Edited images may be too large to save or send via MMS.

Adding Text & Stamps

Text/stamps can only be added when *Picture Editor*
appears.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file* ➡
Options (☺) ➡ *Picture Editor*

1 *Adding Text*

❶ **Select *Paste* and press ●**

☐ To specify colour, press ☺ **Options** ➡ Select *Change
Colour* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a combination ➡
Press ●

❷ **Select *Free Text* and press ●**

☐ To enter the date, select *Date* ➡ Press ● ➡ Skip
ahead to Step 2

❸ **Enter text and press ●**

- Enter up to 16 characters.
- Scan Code feature is disabled.

☐ To re-enter text, press ☺ **Back** ➡ Start over from
Step ❷

Adding Stamps

❶ **Select *Stamp* and press ●**

❷ **Select a stamp and press ●**

☐ To change the stamp, press ☺ **Back** ➡ Start over
from Step ❷

2 Use ☺ to move text or stamp to target location and press ●

3 Press ☺ Save

4 Enter name and press ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Face Arrange

Make smiley, angry or sad faces.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Use portrait images.
- Face Arrange may not fit all images. Adjust position and size as required (see right).
- Face Arrange can only be applied when *Picture Editor* appears.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file* ➡ *Options (*☺*)* ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ *Face Arrange*

1 Select a type and press ●

- Face Arrange Types:

Collage: Right-half	Copies right side of face onto left side
Collage: Left-half	Copies left side of face onto right side
Grin	Pulls eyes down & mouth up
Mad	Pulls eyes up & mouth down
Sad	Pulls eyes & mouth down
Big Eyes	Adds graphic eyes
Burning Eyes	Adds flames in the eyes
Crying	Adds tears
Aristocrat	Adds a monocle and moustache
Angry Mark	Adds a stress mark to face

☐ To check current positions of targets, perform Step 1 on the right.
  ■ Press ⊙ Back to return.
☐ To start over, press ⊙ Back.

2 Press ●

3 Press ⊙ Save

4 Enter name and press ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Note ▶ When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Face Arrange Position

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image. Changes apply to the current image only.

1 In Step 1 on the left, press ☺ Options, select *Positioning* and press ●

2 Press ☺ Modify

A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

3 Set the face line

Use ✪ to move + to the upper left corner
☐ To start over, press ⊙ Back.
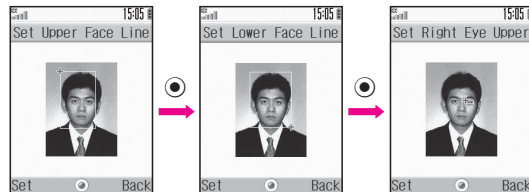
Use ✪ to move + to the lower right corner

Face line is set

4 Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way

Right Eye   Left Eye   Mouth
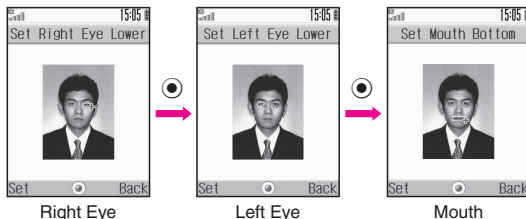
- When finished, all the targets appear.
- To readjust targets, start over from Step 2 on **P.9-10**.
  ■ To restore the original positions, press ◉ Back .

5 Press ◉

6 Press ◙ Yes

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted, and Face Arrange menu returns.

- Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Additional Picture Effects

These effects can only be applied when **Picture Editor** appears.

Frame	Add Frame to JPEG and PNG images

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file* ➡ *Options (◙)* ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ *Frame*

Select a frame ➡ **Press ◉** ➡ **Press ◉** ➡
Press ◉ Save ➡ **Enter name** ➡ **Press ◉**

Rotate	Rotate images

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file* ➡ *Options (◙)* ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ *Rotate*

Select a type ➡ **Press ◉** ➡ **Press ◉** ➡
Press ◉ Save ➡ **Enter name** ➡ **Press ◉**

File Format & Size

■ Convert file format and change file size.
  ■ Follow these steps before saving a file after applying effects with Picture Editor.
- **Converting File Format**
  Select *Format* ➡ **Press ◉** ➡ **Select** *File Format* ➡ **Press ◉**
  ➡ **Select a format** ➡ **Press ◉** ➡ **Press ◉** Back
  ■ Changing file format may affect file size and image quality.
- **Changing File Size**
  Select *Format* ➡ **Press ◉** ➡ **Select** *File Size* ➡ **Press ◉**
  ➡ **Select a size** ➡ **Press ◉** ➡ **Press ◉** Back
  ■ Changing file size may affect image quality.

9

Managing Files (Data Folder)

9-11

Panorama Images

Combine two still images into one.

Select two images → Merge Panorama
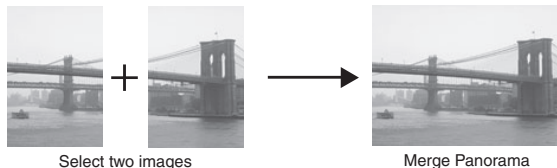
Panorama Image Effects:

Standard	Applicable to all kinds of shots
Near View	Best suited for close-up shots with parallax correction
Document	Use for images with text

- Use JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 and W 120 x H 160 dots/W 160 x H 120 dots.
- Some portions may be cropped to adjust two images to the same size.
- The result may not be satisfactory if colour tones are different between two images.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file** ➡ *Options (☉)* ➡ *Composite*

*This image appears on the left when combined.

1 Select *Merge Panorama* and press ●

Left image is set.
- *Merge Panorama* is disabled if image is too large or too small.

2 Select ② and press ●

3 Select another image and press ●

Two images are set.
- If the image is too large or too small, select another.

4 Select *EFFECT* and press ●

5 Select from *Standard* to *Document* and press ●

▢ To check images, select either ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ☉ **Back** to return.
▢ To change images, select either ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☉ **Change** ➡ Select an image ➡ Press ●

1 Image0001.jpg
2 Image0002.jpg
EFFECT Document
Select ● Save

Merge Panorama Window

6 Press ☉ **Save**

7 Press ●

8 Enter name and press ●

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Split Screen

Combine up to four reduced images into one.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Images are placed in the upper left, upper right, lower left and lower right in numerical order.

Split Image

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Pictures* ➡ *Select a file** ➡ *Options (☺)* ➡ *Composite*
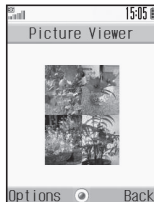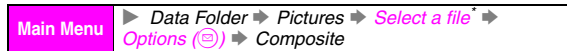
*This image appears in the upper left when combined.

1 Select *SplitPicture 240x320* or *SplitPicture 120x160* and press ⦿

Upper left image is set.

2 Select ② and press ⦿

3 Select an image and press ⦿

Two images are set.

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to add images

- In Step 2, select ③ or ④.
- ▢ To preview Split Picture, press ☺ **Options** ➡ Select *Full Screen* ➡ Press ⦿
  - Press ◉ **Back** to return.
- ▢ To change images, select one ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ☺ **Change** ➡ Select an image ➡ Press ⦿
- ▢ To delete images, select one ➡ Press ☺ **Options** ➡ Select *Remove* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ☺ **Yes**

① Image0001.jpg
② Image0002.jpg
③ Image0003.jpg
④ Image0004.jpg

Split Picture Preview

5 Press ◉ Save

6 Enter name and press ⦿

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Text Templates

Save frequently used phrases for use in mail message, etc.
Save up to 50 entries of up to 256 characters each.

New Entry

Main Menu	▶ *Data Folder* ➜ *Text Templates* ➜ *<Add New Entry>*

1 Enter text and press ●

Tip ▶ To paste saved text into text entry windows, see **P.3-13** "Using Text Templates".
Alternatively, see **P.9-6** to open Data Folder and paste saved text into message text.

Opening Templates

Main Menu	▶ *Data Folder* ➜ *Text Templates*

1 Select a file and press ●
■ Press ⊙ `Back` to return.

Editing Templates

Main Menu	▶ *Data Folder* ➜ *Text Templates* ➜ *Select a file* ➜ *Options (⊜)* ➜ *Edit*

1 Edit text and press ●
File is overwritten.

Deleting Templates

Delete single Text Templates.

Main Menu	▶ *Data Folder* ➜ *Text Templates* ➜ *Select a file* ➜ *Options (⊜)* ➜ *Delete*

1 Press ⊜ `Yes`

Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

• Assign different names to folders within a layer.
• Folders cannot be added to Custom Screens, DCIM, V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates folders.

Main Menu	▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press ●
• Select a folder other than Custom Screens, DCIM, V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates.

2 Press ⊜ `Options`
■ For Other Documents folder, after Step 2, select **Advanced** ➜ Press ●
■ Omit these steps when Other Documents folder is empty.

3 Select *Create Folder* and press ●

4 Enter name and press ●

Changing File/Folder Name

- File extensions do not change.
- Assign different names to files/folders within a layer.
  - Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, |, ?, ＊ and " are not supported.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Folders/files in DCIM, V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates folders cannot be renamed.
  - Text blocks that appear in Text Templates file list are initial portions of Text Templates. They are not file names and thus cannot be changed with these steps. (To change them, edit the initial portions of Text Templates.)

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press ●
  • Select a folder other than DCIM, V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates.

2 Select a file or folder and press ◙ Options

3 Select *Rename* and press ●

4 Edit name and press ●

Deleting Files & Folders

Delete files and created folders in Data Folder.
- Delete folder contents before deleting folders.
- To delete files in Text Templates folder, see **P.9-14** "Deleting Templates". To delete V-applications and IC-appli, see **P.16-6** "Deleting V-applications".

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press ●
  • Select a folder other than V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates.

2 *Deleting Folders*
  ❶ Select a folder and press ◙ Options
  Deleting Single Files
  ❶ Select a file and press ◙ Options
  Deleting Multiple Files
  ❶ Perform from Step 2 on P.9-5 to select multiple files and press ◙ Options

3 Select *Delete* and press ●

4 Press ◙ Yes

Copying/Moving Files

Copy or move files to the corresponding folder on Memory Card or to created sub folders within the folder (handset or Memory Card).

- Copy or move files in DCIM folder to Pictures folder (handset or Memory Card).
- Copy/forward protected files cannot be copied.
- Some files may not be copied or moved.
- Files in V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates folders cannot be copied or moved.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press ●
- Select a folder other than V-appli, IC-appli and Text Templates.
  ▢ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
  ➡ Press ●

2 *Copying/Moving Single Files*
   ▮ **Select a file and press** ✉ Options
   Copying/Moving Multiple Files
   ▮ **Perform from Step 2 on P.9-5 to select multiple files and press** ✉ Options
   - Skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select *Advanced* and press ●

4 Select *Copy* or *Move* and press ●

5 Open a target folder and press ●

Note ▶
- Files copied or moved to Memory Card may not be usable on other Vodafone handsets, PCs or other devices.
- If a copy protected file is included in the selected files, *Could not copy files. Please check files or Memory Status* appears; remaining files are copied.
- Name of copied or moved file may change when the same name already exists in the folder.

Additional Settings/Connectivity

Mode Settings

Activate Normal, Meeting, Activity, Car, Headset or Manner mode to change multiple 804SH settings at one time; each mode is a basket of defaults tailored to each usage pattern.

Activating a Mode

Mode Settings	Select from six modes

Default Normal

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ➡ **Press ⦿**

Customising Modes

Personalise	Customise volume, Ringtone/Ringvideo, system sounds, vibration and Mobile/Small Light settings for each mode

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ➡ **Press ⊠ Options** ➡ **Select** *Personalise* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Select an item** ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Customise settings (see P.10-10 - 10-13)**

Any Key Answer	Activate or cancel Any Key Answer (see **P.2-5**) for each mode

Default Normal/Meeting/Activity/Manner: Off, Car/Headset: On

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ➡ **Press ⊠ Options** ➡ **Select** *Personalise* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Select** *Any Key Answer* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Choose** *On* (activate) or *Off* ➡ **Press ⦿**

Answer Phone	Activate or cancel Answer Phone for incoming calls in Manner mode

■ Available for Manner mode only.
Default On

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *Mode Settings*

Select *Manner* ➡ **Press ⊠ Options** ➡ **Select** *Personalise* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Select** *Answer Phone* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Choose** *On* (activate) or *Off* ➡ **Press ⦿**

Note ▶ In Manner mode, Answer Phone setting in Mode Settings takes priority over that in Tools (see **P.2-8**).

Reset

Set to Default	Reset settings for each mode

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ➡ **Press ⊠ Options** ➡ **Select** *Set to Default* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Press ⊠ Yes**

Display

Display Settings

Wallpaper	Use Wallpaper to show an image in Standby

Default Citrus

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *Display* ▶ *Wallpaper*

Select *Preset Pictures*, *My Pictures* or *Other Documents* ▶ Press ⬤ ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ⬤ twice

■ To cancel, select *Blank* ▶ Press ⬤

Restoring Custom Screen Wallpaper

■ When Wallpaper is set while Custom Screen is active, Wallpaper takes priority over Custom Screen Wallpaper. (Custom Screen remains active.)
To restore Custom Screen Wallpaper, follow these steps after opening Wallpaper menu.

Select *Custom Screen* ▶ Press ⬤ twice

Note ▶ • If mail arrives while setting Wallpaper, setting may take up to 30 seconds to complete; 804SH will not accept Voice Calls until Wallpaper setting is finished.
• Some images may be incompatible/not appear correctly.

Tip ▶ • When a V-application is set as Screensaver, Wallpaper may not appear.
• Using Wallpaper shortens Battery Time.

System Graphics	Use images for Power On/Off, incoming calls and Alarm windows

Default Power On/Power Off: Preset Animation,
Incoming Voice Call/
Incoming Video Call/Alarm: Pattern 1

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *Display* ▶ *System Graphics*

Power On/Power Off
Select *Power On* or *Power Off* ▶ Press ⬤ ▶ Select *Preset Animation*, *My Pictures* or *Other Documents* ▶ Press ⬤ twice

■ For *My Pictures* and *Other Documents*, select an image ▶ Press ⬤ twice

Incoming Calls/Alarm
Select *Incoming Voice Call*, *Incoming Video Call* or *Alarm* ▶ Press ⬤ ▶ Select from *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 3*, *My Pictures* and *Other Documents* ▶ Press ⬤ twice

■ For *My Pictures* and *Other Documents*, select an image ▶ Press ⬤ twice
• Select *My Pictures* or *Other Documents* to use images in Data Folder. If a rectangle appears, use ✺ to specify display area and press ⬤.

Restoring Custom Screen System Graphics

■ When System Graphics are set while Custom Screen is active, System Graphics take priority over Custom Screen System Graphics. (Custom Screen remains active.)
To restore to Custom Screen System Graphics for *Incoming Voice Call*, *Incoming Video Call* or *Alarm*, follow these steps after opening the corresponding menu.

Select *Custom Screen* ▶ Press ⬤ twice

Note ▶ • Ringtone and Ringvideo images for Mode Settings may take priority over System Graphics for incoming calls.
• Ringtone, Ringvideo and Picture images for Phone Book entries take priority over System Graphics for incoming calls with caller ID.

Font Settings | Change the weight of handset fonts

<div align="right">Default Normal</div>

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *Font Settings*

Select a weight ➡ Press ⬤

Greeting Message | Create a short text message to appear on Display each time handset power is activated

<div align="right">Default Off</div>

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *Greeting Message*

Edit Message

Select *Edit Message* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter a message ➡ Press ⬤
• Enter up to 10 characters.
• To set the message to appear, choose *On* in Switch On/Off.

Switch On/Off

Select *Switch On/Off* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ⬤

Show Operator Name | Show or hide the name of your service provider (*Vodafone JP*, etc.) in Standby

<div align="right">Default Off</div>

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *Show Operator Name*

Choose *On* (name appears) or *Off* ➡ Press ⬤

Language | Switch handset interface between Japanese and English

<div align="right">Default Automatic</div>

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *言語選択*

Select *Automatic, English* or *日本語* ➡ Press ⬤
• For *Automatic*, interface language switches according to language information on USIM Card.

Custom Screens

Download and install applications that load single-themed handset Wallpaper, menu windows, indicators, Ringtones and more, all at the same time.
• In addition to preloaded Custom Screens, use Custom Screens downloaded via Web.
• See **P.10-6** to use preloaded Custom Screens (*Calm light*, *Soft square* and *DJ MICKEY*).
• *Calm light* is installed by default.
• Custom Screen Catalogues (▣) are saved in handset Data Folder (Custom Screens).
Custom Screen Catalogues are introductory samples and cannot be set.

Downloading Custom Screens

To download Custom Screens, open handset Data Folder
(Custom Screens).

- Some Custom Screens are fee-based.
- To use fee-based Custom Screens, download Custom Screen
  Keys to handset (see right).
- Custom Screens and Custom Screen Keys are downloaded
  via Web. Make sure signal is strong.
- Custom Screens can be downloaded via **カスタモ** (http://
  www.custamo.com/) using a PC.

Note ▶ Read information (Custom Screen Key price, expiry date,
etc.) on Custom Screen Key download page.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➜ *Custom Screens*

1 **Select *Get New* and press ⦿**

Handset connects to the Network and download page appears.
⬛ To download from Custom Screen Catalogues (📖), select one
  ➜ Press ⦿ ➜ Press 🖂 **Install** ➜ Press 🖂 **Yes**

2 **Download a Custom Screen**

- Read through information on the site.
- When using a PC, download a Custom Screen to the following
  directory on a Memory Card. Do not change file name,
  extension, etc.
  ■ PRIVATE/VODAFONE/My Items/Themes

■Purchasing Custom Screen Keys

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 **Select *Custom Screens* and press ⦿**

Available Custom Screens appear.
- Types of Custom Screens and their Indicators:

Type	Key	Status	Indicator
Fee-based	Found	Active	🗝
		Inactive	🗝
	Not Found	Active	🗝
		Inactive	🗝
Free	N/A	Active	✉
	N/A	Inactive	None

⬛ Use ⊙ to switch between handset and Memory Card.

2 **Select a Custom Screen for which to download
the Key and press 🖂 Options**

- Select one with 🗝.

3 **Select *Activate* and press ⦿**

4 Press ✉ Activate

Handset connects to the Network and download page appears.

- Custom Screen Key download page contains the following information:
  - Custom Screen Key price
  - Payment method
  - Terms of service
  - Link to customer enquiry service

  ☐ To cancel, press ◉ Cancel.

5 Read through terms of service and download Custom Screen Key following online instructions

6 After download, press ✉ OK

7 Press ✉ Yes

☐ To cancel setting, press ◉ No.

8 Press ✉ OK

Custom Screen is set and Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

Note ▶ Replacing USIM Card with one containing different customer information, or turning on handset without USIM Card inserted deletes all downloaded Custom Screen Keys; handset repairs may also delete Custom Screen Keys. If handset number is unchanged, however, previously downloaded Keys may be re-downloaded at no charge (transmission fees apply).

Delete	Delete Custom Screen and Custom Screen Key

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Custom Screens*

Select a Custom Screen ➡ Press ✉ Options ➡ Select Delete ➡ Press ◉ ➡ Press ✉ Yes

☐ To delete the corresponding Custom Screen Key at the same time, press ✉ Yes.
  - To cancel, press ◉ No. (Only Custom Screen will be deleted.)

- Custom Screen Keys cannot be deleted independently.
- Delete preloaded Custom Screen Catalogues as needed.

Web Access	Access Custom Screen source sites

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder* ➡ *Custom Screens*

Select a Custom Screen ➡ Press ✉ Options ➡ Select Web Access ➡ Press ◉

- *Web Access* does not appear if source site is not available.

Custom Screen Setup

Custom Screen setup may take some time. (Pressing ☎ does not cancel setup.)

■ Preset Custom Screens

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Custom Screens* ➡ *Preset Screens*

1 Select *Calm light*, *Soft square* or *DJ MICKEY* and press ◉

■Custom Screens in Data Folder

1 Select *Custom Screens* and press ●

Available Custom Screens appear.
(Types of Custom Screens and their Indicators: see **P.10-5**)
☐ Use ⊙ to switch between handset and Memory Card.

2 Select a Custom Screen and press ●

- Custom Screens with ⊰ cannot be set.
- Select a Custom Screen and press ⊚ **Options** to open properties, change file names or copy/move to other folders (see **P.9-5**, **P.9-15**, **P.9-16**).

3 Press ⊚ **Install**

4 Press ⊚ **OK**

Custom Screen is set and Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

Note ▶
- Some Custom Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, Ringtones or Ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.
- Custom Screen setup may fail when battery is low or depending on the contents.

Tip ▶ Once installed, Custom Screen remains active even after Memory Card is removed or replaced with another.

Light Settings

Backlight	Select Display and Keypad Backlight illumination time or Display Brightness

Default Time Out: 15 seconds, Brightness: Level 2

Backlight Illumination Time

Select *Time Out* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select time ➡ Press ●
☐ To disable Backlight, choose *Off* ➡ Press ●

Display Brightness

Select *Brightness* ➡ Press ● ➡ Use ⦿ to adjust level ➡ Press ●

Tip ▶ Keypad light Brightness is fixed.

Display Saving	Select a period of inactivity after which Display shuts down

Default 2 minutes

Select a period ➡ Press ●

External Display Settings

Switch On/Off	Activate or deactivate External Display

Default On

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (😊)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *External Display* ➡ *Switch On/Off*

Choose *On* (activate) or *Off* ➡ Press ●

Backlight	Select Backlight illumination time for External Display

Default 15 seconds

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (😊)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *External Display* ➡ *Backlight*

Select time ➡ Press ●

■ To disable Backlight, choose *Off* ➡ Press ●

LCD Contrast	Adjust External Display Contrast from nine levels

Default Level: 5

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (😊)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *External Display* ➡ *LCD Contrast*

Use 🔘 to adjust level ➡ Press ●

Caller Display	Show or hide caller's number or name on External Display

Default On

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (😊)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *External Display* ➡ *Caller Display*

Choose *On* (show) or *Off* ➡ Press ●

Viewing Images on External Devices

Use optional Video Cable to connect 804SH to a TV, VCR, etc. to view images or exportable V-applications saved on 804SH/Memory Card.

- Exportable Sources:
  - V-applications ■ Picture Viewer ■ Video Player
- Some images and sounds will not play on external devices.
- When V-applications, etc. are viewed on external devices, images do not appear on handset Display.
- Not available when handset is closed.

Connecting to External Devices
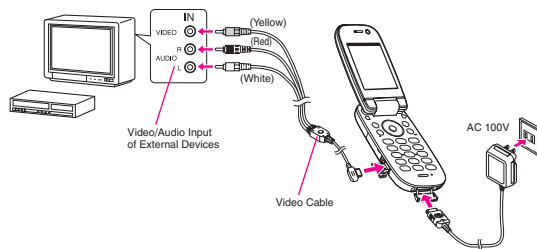
Precautions

Observe the following when connecting TV, VCR, etc. and handset:

- Turn off the device before connecting/disconnecting Video Cable.
- Connect Video Cable only to the video/audio inputs of the device and VIDEO OUT Connector of 804SH. Video Cable is designed exclusively for 804SH.
- Plug in firmly. To disconnect, grasp the plug and pull gently.
- Do not pull, twist or bend Video Cable to avoid damaging the cable and handset VIDEO OUT Connector.

Selecting TV System

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *Video Output* ➡ *TV System*

1 **Select *NTSC* or *PAL* and press ●**

Note ▶ Use *NTSC* in Japan. Outside Japan, select either according to available TV system.

Activating Video Output

- Connect 804SH to device before activating Video Output.
- Video Output is *Off* by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Display* ➡ *Video Output* ➡ *Switch On/Off*

1 **Choose *On* and press ●**
- ☐ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ●

2 **View exportable images, video, etc.**
- When exporting V-application or video images, press ⌨ to toggle display between device and handset.
  - ■ Video restarts each time display is switched.
- Exiting Video Output:
  - ■ Press ⌨
  - ■ Press ● **Back** (for images/video)
  - ■ Press ⌨ (for images/video)
  - ■ Close handset

Toggle Display Size

■ Activate Video Output and follow these steps.
Select *Display Size* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Original Size* or *Enlarge* ➡ Press ⬤

Rotate Image

■ Activate Video Output and follow these steps.
Select *Rotation Setting* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select from *No Rotation* to *180°* ➡ Press ⬤

■ Images in Pictures folder and V-applications cannot be rotated.

Full Screen Display

■ Follow these steps while viewing images.
Press ⌨ Options ➡ Select *Full Screen* ➡ Press ⬤

• Some images may not be supported.

Note ▶ • While Video Output is in use, control the volume on the connected device. Turn down the volume before disconnecting from handset.
• Images may be noisy or distorted depending on the device. Images may be cropped vertically when enlarged.

Tip ▶ Battery drains faster when Video Output is in use.

Sounds & Alerts

Customising Handset Responses

Volume	Set Ringtone volume/general volume

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (⬡)* ➡ *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ *Volume*

Select *For Incoming Call*, *For New Message* or *General Volume* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Use ⬥ to adjust level ➡ Press ⬤

• Select from five levels. When *Increasing Volume* is set, volume increases every four seconds from *Level 1* to *Level 5*. *Increasing Volume* is not available for *General Volume*.
• Corresponding Sounds:

For Incoming Call	Ringtones/Ringvideos for incoming Voice/Video Calls
For New Message	Ringtones/Ringvideos for incoming mail
General Volume	System sounds, Data Folder sound file playback

Note ▶ • Chaku-Uta set as Ringtone plays at Level 1 even when *Increasing Volume* is set.
• For better hearing, avoid covering handset speaker (External Display side) and keep it up when placing handset on a table, etc.

| Ringtone/ Ringvideos | Set Ringtones or Ringvideos for Voice Calls, Video Calls and mail |

Assign Tone

Select *For Voice Call*, *For Video Call* or *For New Message* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Assign Tone* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Preset Sounds* or *My Sounds* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select sound ➡ Press ◎ Assign

■ For *My Sounds*, select a file and press ⬤.
■ To play tones in Preset Sounds, select one and press ⬤.
  ■ Press ⬤ to stop.
■ To play files in My Sounds, select one and press ◎ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⬤
  ■ Press ⬤ Back to stop.

Assign Video

Select *For Voice Call*, *For Video Call* or *For New Message* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Assign Video* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select video ➡ Press ⬤

■ To play video files, select one and press ◎ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⬤
  ■ Press ⬤ Back to stop.

Duration

Select *For New Message* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Duration* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter time (01 - 99) ➡ Press ⬤

Restoring Custom Screen Ringtone/Ringvideo

■ When Ringtone/Ringvideo is set while Custom Screen is active, Ringtone/Ringvideo takes priority over Custom Screen Ringtone/Ringvideo. (Custom Screen remains active.)
To restore Custom Screen Ringtone/Ringvideo, follow these steps after opening *For Voice Call*, *For Video Call* or *For New Message* menu.

Select *Custom Screen* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Press ◎

Note ▶
- Some files may not be usable.
- When files are downloading or streaming, default Ringtone/Ringvideo may sound/play for Voice Calls.
- V-application set as Screensaver that also responds to incoming communications may take priority.

Tip ▶ Video files over 3 MB and 3GPP video may take up to three seconds to appear after calls/mail arrive.

| Vibration | Handset vibrates for incoming calls/mail |

Default Off

Activating/Deactivating

Select *For Incoming Call* or *For New Message* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Switch On/Off* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *On*, *Link to Sound* or *Off* ➡ Press ⬤

• *Link to Sound*: Handset vibrates only when Ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.

Vibration Pattern

Select *For Incoming Call* or *For New Message* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Vibration Pattern* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select from *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5* ➡ Press ⬤

■ To check vibration patterns, select one and press ◎ Play.
  ■ Press ◎ Stop to stop.

Note ▶ Disable vibration when charging.

Event Light	Select whether to illuminate Mobile Light for incoming calls/mail

DefaultOn

Activating/Deactivating

Select *For Voice Call*, *For Video Call* or *For New Message* ➡ Press ⏺ ➡ Select *Switch On/Off* ➡ Press ⏺ ➡ Select *On*, *Link to Sound* or *Off* ➡ Press ⏺

• *Link to Sound*: Mobile Light illuminates only when Ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.

Selecting Light Colour

Select *For Voice Call*, *For Video Call* or *For New Message* ➡ Press ⏺ ➡ Select *Light Colour* ➡ Press ⏺ ➡ Select a colour ➡ Press ⏺

 ▢ To check colours, select one and press 🖃 **Play**.
   ■ Press 🖃 **Stop** to stop.

Status Light	Select whether to illuminate Mobile/Small Light for missed incoming calls/mail

DefaultOn (Mobile Light)/Green

Activating/Deactivating

Select *For Missed Call*, *For New Message* or *For Answer Phone* ➡ Press ⏺ ➡ Select *Switch On/Off* ➡ Press ⏺ ➡ Select *On (Mobile Light)*, *On (Small Light)* or *Off* ➡ Press ⏺

Selecting Mobile Light Colour

Select *For Missed Call*, *For New Message* or *For Answer Phone* ➡ Press ⏺ ➡ Select *Mobile Light Colour* ➡ Press ⏺ ➡ Select a colour ➡ Press ⏺

 ▢ To check colours, select one and press 🖃 **Play**.
   ■ Press 🖃 **Stop** to stop.

Customising System Sounds

Keypad Tones	A tone sounds when a key is pressed

DefaultTouch Tone

Assign Touch Tone

Select *Touch Tone* ➡ Press ⏺

Assign a Pattern

Select *Pattern 1*, *Pattern 2* or *Pattern 3* ➡ Press 🖃 Assign

 ▢ To check patterns, select one and press ⏺.
   ■ Press ⏺ to return.

Disable Keypad Tones

Choose *Off* ➡ Press ⏺

Warning Tone & Power On/Off Sound	Select a tone to sound for errors or when turning power on/off as well as its duration
	Default Warning Tone: Sound Effect 6 (0.5 seconds), Power On/Off Sound: Sound Effect 8 (3 seconds)

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (⊙)* ➡ *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ *System Sounds*

Sound Pattern

Select *Warning Tone*, *Power On Sound* or *Power Off Sound* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select *Tone* or *Sound* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select *Preset Sounds* or *My Sounds* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select sound ➡ Press ⊡ Assign

- For *My Sounds*, select a file and press ⊙.
- To play tones in Preset Sounds, select one and press ⊙.
  - Press ⊙ to stop.
- To play files in My Sounds, select one and press ⊡ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⊙
  - Press ⊙ Back to stop.

Duration

Select *Warning Tone*, *Power On Sound* or *Power Off Sound* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select *Duration* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select/enter time ➡ Press ⊙

Disable Tone

Select *Warning Tone*, *Power On Sound* or *Power Off Sound* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select *Tone* or *Sound* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Choose *Off* ➡ Press ⊙

Additional Sound Setting

Surround	Activate or deactivate speaker surround
	Default On

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (⊙)* ➡ *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ *Surround*

Choose *On*, *Link to Sound* or *Off* ➡ Press ⊙

Note ▶ Sounds skip when handset is opened while playing Chaku-Uta, music or video with Surround *On*. This is not a malfunction.

Date & Time

See indicated pages for these items.

World Clock	See **P.11-13**	Alarm	See **P.11-10**

Set Date/Time	Set the date and time

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (⊙)* ➡ *Date & Time* ➡ *Set Date/Time*

Enter the year ➡ Enter the month ➡ Enter the day ➡ Enter the time (24-hour clock format) ➡ Press ⊙

- The day of the week is set automatically.

Note ▶ When removing the battery for replacement, etc., Clock settings remain. However, should the handset go without power for an extended period of time (approximately one week), Clock will need to be reset.

Tip ▶
- When Clock has not been set, *--/--/-- --:--* appears for date and time.
- To correct numbers, use ⊙ to move cursor and re-enter digits.
- Choose a Clock type or use Calendar for Standby (see **P.10-14**).

Set Time Zone/ Daylight Saving	Change Time Zone or activate Daylight Saving

DefaultTime Zone: Tokyo, Daylight Saving: Off

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (☺)* ▶ *Date & Time*

Time Zone

Select *Set Time Zone* ▶ Press ● ▶ Use ⊙ to select a Time Zone ▶ Press ●

■ If your zone is not preset, press ✉ **Options** ▶ Select *Set Custom Zone* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ▶ Press ● ▶ Use ⟳ to select *+* or *-* ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Enter time difference ▶ Press ●

Daylight Saving

Select *Daylight Saving* ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose *On* ▶ Press ●

■ To cancel, select *Daylight Saving* ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose *Off* ▶ Press ●

• Activate Daylight Saving to advance handset local time by one hour.

Display Date & Time	Show or hide Clock/Calendar in Standby

DefaultClock: Large, Calendar: Off

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (☺)* ▶ *Date & Time* ▶ *Display Date & Time*

Clock

Select *Show Clock* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *Large*, *Small* or *World Clock* ▶ Press ●

■ To hide Clock, choose *Off* ▶ Press ●

Calendar

Select *Show Calendar* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *1 month* or *2 months* ▶ Press ●

■ To hide Calendar, choose *Off* ▶ Press ●

■ Calendar Contents
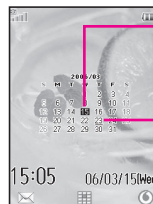
Current Date
• Highlighted

Scheduled Date
• Underlined
(see **P.11-2** "Calendar" for schedules)

Tip ▶ • Calendar appears on Wallpaper.
• When a V-application is set as Screensaver, Calendar may not appear.

Date/Time Format	Change date/time format

DefaultTime Format: 24 Hour, Date Format: Y/M/D

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (☺)* ▶ *Date & Time*

Time Format

Select *Time Format* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *24 Hour* or *12 Hour* ▶ Press ●

Date Format

Select *Date Format* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *D.M.Y*, *M-D-Y* or *Y/M/D* ▶ Press ●

Calendar Format	Select whether to start the week on Sunday or Monday

DefaultSunday-Saturday

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (☺)* ▶ *Date & Time* ▶ *Calendar Format*

Select *Sunday-Saturday* or *Monday-Sunday* ▶ Press ●

Additional Settings/Connectivity

10-14

Wake-up Alarm	Set handset to turn on automatically to announce Alarm Time

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *Date & Time* ▶ *Wake-up Alarm*

Choose *On* ▶ Press ⦿
☐ To cancel, choose *Off* ▶ Press ⦿

User Dictionary

Entries (Japanese Only)

Save frequently used words/phrases. Assign a reading (keyword) in hiragana to each entry. In text entry windows, enter a reading and convert. Saved words/phrases appear among word suggestions.

- Save up to 100 entries.
- Save up to five words/phrases per reading.

New Entry	Save words/phrases to User Dictionary

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *User Dictionary* ▶ *New Entry*

Enter a word/phrase ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Enter a reading (keyword) ▶ Press ⦿

- Enter up to 15 characters per word/phrase and eight characters in hiragana per reading.

Edit/Delete	Edit or delete entries

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *User Dictionary* ▶ *Edit Dictionary*

Edit
Select a word/phrase ▶ Press ⊠ Options ▶ Select *Edit* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Edit the word/phrase ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Edit reading ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Press ⊠ Yes

Delete
Select a word/phrase ▶ Press ⊠ Options ▶ Select *Delete* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Press ⊠ Yes

804SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)

Download specialised 804SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp's *Space Town* Mobile Internet site (see **P.15-6**). Activate up to two dictionaries at one time to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among word suggestions.

Acquire Dictionary	Activate downloaded dictionary

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)* ▶ *User Dictionary* ▶ *Acquire Dictionary*

Select *Dictionary 1* or *Dictionary 2* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Select a dictionary ▶ Press ⦿
☐ To replace dictionaries, select one and press ⊠ Options ▶ Select *Change* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Select a dictionary ▶ Press ⦿

Note ▶ Some dictionary files may not be usable.

Cancel	Cancel dictionary

Select a dictionary ➡ **Press** ⊚ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Cancel* ➡ **Press** ●

Information	View dictionary information

Select a dictionary ➡ **Press** ⊚ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Information* ➡ **Press** ●

Handset Security

PIN

For more information on PIN, see **P.1-6**.

PIN Entry	Select whether to require PIN every time handset is turned on (with USIM Card inserted)

Default:Off

Choose *On* **or** *Off* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter PIN1** ➡ **Press** ●

PIN Lock

■ PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively. To cancel PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock, follow these steps.

Open a function requiring PIN1 or PIN2 ➡ **Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code)** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter new PIN1 or PIN2** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Re-enter PIN1 or PIN2** ➡ **Press** ●

- For information on Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code), contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
- If PUK Code is incorrectly entered ten times, USIM Card is locked. (Count continues even if handset power is turned off.)
- For procedures required to unlock USIM Card, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Change PIN	Change PIN1 or PIN2

■Activate PIN Entry first.

PIN1

Select *PIN Entry* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *Change PIN* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter current PIN1** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter new PIN1** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Re-enter new PIN1** ➡ **Press** ●

PIN2

Select *Change PIN2* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter current PIN2** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter new PIN2** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Re-enter new PIN2** ➡ **Press** ●

Handset Locks

Handset Lock — Activate Handset Lock to require Handset Code each time handset power is turned on

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Locks* ➡ *Handset Lock*

Choose *On* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ⦿

■ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ⦿

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Handset Lock is active. For more, see **P.2-4** "Emergency Calls".

Function Lock — Restrict access to handset functions

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Locks* ➡ *Function Lock*

Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ⦿

■ To unlock, enter Handset Code in Standby or during a call ➡ Press ⦿

● Function Lock remains active even if handset power is deactivated, then reactivated.

When Function Lock is Active

■ In Standby, press ⦿ for 2+ seconds to deactivate handset power, ⦿ for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock, ⦿ - ⦿ to enter Handset Code or ⦿ to edit Handset Code entry.
■ During a call, press ⦿ to end the call, ⦿ or ⦿ to show/hide Options or switch images during Video Calls, ⦿ to mute/unmute Microphone, ⦿ to switch between callers in Call Waiting, ⦿ - ⦿ to enter Handset Code or ⦿ to edit Handset Code entry.
■ When a call arrives, press ⦿ to show Options. Answer calls by pressing ⦿ or keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-5**), or reject calls by pressing ⦿. Press ⦿ to forward incoming calls (when *No Answer* is set for Diverts).

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Function Lock is active. For more, see **P.2-4** "Emergency Calls".

Phone Book Lock — Protect Phone Book entries from accidental alteration and restrict access to Phone Book information

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Phone Settings (◌)* ➡ *Locks* ➡ *Phone Book Lock*

Choose *On* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ⦿

■ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ⦿

Note ▶ When Phone Book Lock is active, the following Phone Book operations are disabled:
■ Searching, saving, editing and dialling, including Speed Dial (see **P.4-14**).

Secret Mode

Activate Secret Mode to open Secret Mode entries.

Show Secret Data	Activate or cancel Secret Mode

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (○)* ▶ *Locks* ▶ *Show Secret Data*

Choose *On* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ●

☐ To cancel Secret Mode, choose *Off* ▶ Press ●

Note ▶ Do not save confidential information in Phone Book/schedule entries. Handset Code and thus Secret Mode entries may be compromised.

When Secret Mode is Off

■ Phone Book Names/Picture images do not appear for incoming calls/mail from numbers/addresses in Secret Mode entries. Personal Ringtones/Ringvideos are disabled. Names for numbers in Secret Mode entries do not appear in Dialled Numbers, Received Calls or list of received messages.

Changing Handset Code

Change Handset Code	Whenever necessary, change Handset Code

Default 9999

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (○)* ▶ *Locks* ▶ *Change Handset Code*

Enter current Handset Code ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter new Handset Code ▶ Press ● ▶ Re-enter new Handset Code ▶ Press ●

Reset

Reset Settings	Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (○)* ▶ *Master Reset* ▶ *Reset Settings*

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ⊚ ▊ Yes ▊ **twice**

- Phone Book entries are unaffected.
- A confirmation appears (before entering Handset Code) in the following cases. Press ⊚ ▊ Yes ▊ to proceed.
- ■ V-application is active   ■ Music Player is active
- ■ Bluetooth is active   ■ Infrared is active

Note ▶ Some default settings may not be restored.

Reset All	Clear all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➜ *Phone Settings (◇)* ➜ *Master Reset* ➜ *Reset All*

Enter Handset Code ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Press ⊠** **Yes** **twice**

- A confirmation appears (before entering Handset Code) in the following cases. Press ⊠ **Yes** to proceed.
  - V-application is active ■ Music Player is active
  - Bluetooth is active ■ Infrared is active

Note ▶ • Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Handset Code returns to the default setting. Reset All deletes downloaded V-applications and IC-appli.
- Preloaded Custom Screen Catalogues and V-applications are restored.
- Reset All is disabled if IC Card (see **P.17-2**) data remains. Delete IC Card data beforehand.

Call Settings

See indicated pages for these items.

Voicemail & Diverts	See **P.12-3**, **P.12-2**	**Show My Number**	See **P.12-9**
Call Waiting	See **P.12-5**	**Call Barring**	See **P.12-6**

International Call

Int'l Prefix	Save frequently used international prefix

Default 0046010

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➜ *Call/Video Call (◇)* ➜ *Call Settings* ➜ *Int'l Calling* ➜ *Int'l Prefix*

Enter a prefix ➜ **Press ●**

Country Codes	Change, add or delete Country Codes

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➜ *Call/Video Call (◇)* ➜ *Call Settings* ➜ *Int'l Calling* ➜ *Country Codes*

Change
Select a country ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Select** *Change* ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Enter a country name** ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Enter country code** ➜ **Press ●**

Add
Select a blank entry ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Enter a country name** ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Enter country code** ➜ **Press ●**

Delete
Select a country ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Select** *Delete* ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Press ⊠** **Yes**

Tip ▶ For details, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Auto Add Code	Add a preset country code automatically when placing calls

Default Off/Country Code: 81 (Japan)

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➜ *Call/Video Call (◇)* ➜ *Call Settings* ➜ *Int'l Calling* ➜ *Auto Add Code*

Activating/Deactivating
Select *Switch On/Off* ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Choose** *On* or *Off* ➜ **Press ●**

Set Country Code
Select *Country Code* ➜ **Press ●** ➜ **Select a country** ➜ **Press ●**

☐ To enter a country code, select *Enter Code* in Country Code list ➜ **Press ●** ➜ Enter a country code ➜ **Press ●**

Note ▶ When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (other than emergency call numbers) unless + is included.

Additional Settings

Minute Minder	Handset beeps once each minute during calls

Default Off

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (📞)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Minute Minder*

Choose *On* (handset beeps) or *Off* ➡ Press ◉
• Handset beeps every minute.

Call Time Counter	Show or hide elapsed Call Time during a call

Default On

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (📞)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Time & Cost* ➡ *Call Time Counter*

Choose *On* (Call Time appears) or *Off* ➡ Press ◉

Display Call Cost	Show or hide Call Cost after each call

Default On

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (📞)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Time & Cost* ➡ *Display Call Cost*

Choose *On* (Call Cost appears) or *Off* ➡ Press ◉

Bluetooth

Getting Started

Bluetooth is a wireless technology that allows 804SH to communicate with other 804SH within 10 m or with other compatible devices (PCs, mobile phones, handsfree devices, etc.).

Precautions

Handset Bluetooth Specifications:

Communication System	Bluetooth specification Ver. 1.2
Bluetooth Profiles Supported	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-up Networking Profile Object Push Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile
Output	Bluetooth Power Class 2

• Bluetooth connections are available with compatible devices supporting the same profile.
• Bring handsets to within 10 m. Bluetooth connection/transfer rate is affected by distance between handsets, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.
• Bluetooth operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on the status of other devices used in the spectrum, Bluetooth connection may slow down/terminate, or the range may decrease.
• Connect 804SH to one device at a time via Bluetooth.

Note ▶ Bluetooth connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth devices.
- Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth devices, connection or data transfers may fail, or operational procedures, display content and actual operations may differ from those described in this manual.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations depending on the status of connected devices or signal conditions.
- For details about headset/handsfree devices, see the device manuals.

Activating Bluetooth

Activate Bluetooth before receiving files/entries or connecting handset to handsfree devices.
Bluetooth is *Off* by default.

| **Main Menu** | ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity (◌)* ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *Switch On/Off* |

1 Choose *On* and press ●

Handset returns to Standby and 🅑 appears.
- To cancel, choose *Off* ▶ Press ●
  - When transmission is in progress, press ☺ **Yes**.

Note ▶ Connection requests from other devices can only be accepted when handset is in Standby or while Main Menu is opened. Files/entries/folders can only be received when handset is in Standby.

Bluetooth Connection

Activate Bluetooth (see left) on recipient device. Connection starts when a request is received from the other device.
(Authorisation Code may be required.)

■Example

Sender		Recipient
Search for devices	▪▪▪▪▶	
Select device	◀▪▪▪▪	Activate Bluetooth
Request connection	▪▪▪▪▶	
	◀▪▪▪▪	Accept
Enter the same Authorisation Code		
Connection completes		
Send	▪▪▪▪▶	Receive
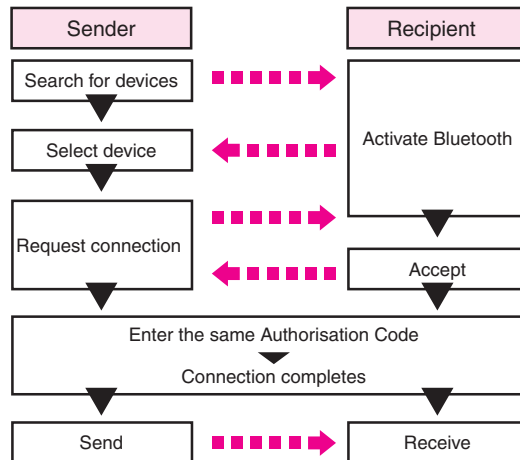
Authorisation Code

■ Authorisation Codes (4 to 16 digits) are specific for Bluetooth connection. Pairing is possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.
- Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

Device Search & Pairing

Search for Bluetooth devices for pairing. Paired devices are automatically registered to handset.

- Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.
- Search for up to 16 devices at a time.
- Device search is disabled if 32 devices are already registered.
- Activate Bluetooth on devices to be paired with.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (☺)* ➡ *Bluetooth*

1 Select *Search for Devices* and press ⦿

Found devices are listed after search. (The previous search result appears, if any.)
- Device Indicators:
  - 💻: PC   🎧: Wireless headset   📟: PDA
  - 📠: Handsfree device   📱: Mobile phone   🖨: Printer
  - ☐: Others
- ▌Press ⦿ *Cancel* to cancel.

2 Select a device and press ⦿

▌When transmission is in progress, press ⓔ *Yes*.

3 Enter the same Authorisation Code (4 to 16 digits) for handset and the other device and press ⦿

When pairing is complete, *Pairing is successful.* appears and Standby returns.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorisation Code.
- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

Pairing with Handsfree Devices

▌Start device search with handsfree devices for pairing.
Handset receives a connection request ➡
Press ⓔ *Yes* ➡ Enter Authorisation Code ➡
Press ⦿
- Activate Bluetooth (see **P.10-21**) on handset and set Visibility (see below) to *Show My Phone*.

Opening Paired Device List

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (☺)* ➡ *Bluetooth*

1 Select *Paired Devices* and press ⦿

List of all paired devices appears.
- ▌To open list of handsfree devices only, press ☺.
- ▌To rename paired devices, select one ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter name (up to 16 characters) ➡ Press ⦿
- ▌To delete paired devices, select one ➡ Press ⓔ *Options* ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⓔ *Yes*

Visibility

Allow other Bluetooth devices to find 804SH during device search.

- Set Visibility to *Hide My Phone* to hide 804SH from other Bluetooth devices.
- Visibility is set to *Show My Phone* by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (☺)* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ *Visibility*

1 Select *Show My Phone* or *Hide My Phone* and press ⦿

Transferring Files via Bluetooth

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer files/entries one by one. Received files/entries are saved to corresponding functions.
All File Transfer	Transfer all files/entries by function
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. Folders are saved to Data Folder. (804SH does not support sending folders.)

Note ▶ • During infrared transfers or Bluetooth transmissions, handset automatically enters Offline Mode. Thus transfers are disabled while receiving calls/messages, during calls, while using Web or Media Player, while editing mail or data, etc. Offline Mode is cancelled after transfers.
• Some entries in Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Text Templates and Bookmarks may not be saved correctly.

Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	In One File transfers, the following settings are lost: Category, Secret and Ringtone. All File transfer includes My Details. Picture setting may be lost depending on the image.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Calendar	Available	1	In One File transfers, Reminder tone and Secret Mode settings are lost. Entries with start date/time that cannot be set on 804SH are lost.
Tasks	Available	1	In One File transfers, Reminder tone and Secret Mode settings are lost. Entries with due date/time that cannot be set on 804SH are overwritten with the date/time of transfer.
Text Templates	2	Available	
Bookmarks	2	Available	Entries with the same title as the existing ones are lost. In One File transfers, received entries are saved to Data Folder (Other Documents) as an unknown file.
Data Folder	Available	3	Files or sub folders in DCIM folder and copy protected files cannot be transferred

[1] In All File transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from *Appointments/Tasks*.
[2] Only receiving files/entries is supported.
[3] Receive folders one by one into handset Data Folder.

Tip ▶ • Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
• Transfer files in Memory Card Data Folder one by one. Files in DCIM folder cannot be transferred.

One File Transfer

▉Sending

Send one file or entry from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks or Data Folder (see **P.10-23**).

1 **Select a file or entry and press ⒝ Options**

2 **Select *Send*, *Send Entry* or *Send My Card* and press ●**

3 **Select *Via Bluetooth* and press ●**
- When there is no entry in Paired Devices, device search starts.
  ▉ To send files/entries to unpaired devices, select *More Devices* ▶ Press ● ▶ Device search starts

4 **Select a device and press ●**
  ▉ When transmission is in progress, press ⒝ Yes .

5 **Prepare recipient device**

6 **Press ●**
Offline Mode is set and transfer starts.
  ▉ When requested, enter Authorisation Code ▶ Press ●

▉Receiving

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity (◌)* ▶ Bluetooth ▶ *Switch On/Off*

1 **Choose *On* and press ●**
Bluetooth is activated and handset returns to Standby.

2 **When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears**
  ▉ To accept connection request from unpaired devices, press ⒝ Yes ▶ Enter Authorisation Code ▶ Press ●

3 **Press ⒝ Yes**
Offline Mode is set and transfer starts.
  ▉ Press ◉ Cancel to cancel.
  ▉ Press ⒞ to end.

4 **Confirmation appears when file or entry is received**

5 **Press ⒝ Yes to save**
  ▉ To cancel transfer, press ◉ No ▶ Press ⒝ Yes

All File Transfer

▌Sending

`Main Menu` ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity (◌)* ▶ *Bluetooth*

1 **Select** *Send All* **and press** ◉
- When there is no entry in Paired Devices, device search starts.
- ▌To send files/entries to unpaired devices, select *More Devices* ▶ Press ◉ ▶ Device search starts

2 **Select a device and press** ◉
- ▌When transmission is in progress, press ⊠ **Yes** .

3 **Press** ⊠ **Yes**
Offline Mode is set.

4 **Enter Handset Code and press** ◉

5 **Prepare recipient device**

6 **Select an item and press** ◉
Transfer starts.
- ▌When requested, enter Authorisation Code ▶ Press ◉
- ▌For Phone Book, *Picture data in Phone Book transfer?* appears. Press ⊠ **Yes** or ◉ **No** .

▌Receiving

`Main Menu` ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity (◌)* ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *Switch On/Off*

1 **Choose** *On* **and press** ◉
Bluetooth is activated and handset returns to Standby.

2 **When connection is requested,** *Calling not available during operation, OK?* **appears**
- ▌To accept connection request from unpaired devices, press ⊠ **Yes** ▶ Enter Authorisation Code ▶ Press ◉

3 **Press** ⊠ **Yes**
Offline Mode is set.

4 **Transfer starts and confirmation appears**
- ▌Press ◉ **Cancel** to cancel.
- ▌Press ⊙ to end.

5 *Adding Entries*
　❶ **Select** *As New Items* **and press** ◉
　　When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.
　　▌Press ◉ **Cancel** to cancel.
　　▌Press ⊙ to end.

　Overwriting Existing Entries
　❶ **Select** *Delete All & Save* **and press** ◉
　❷ **Press** ⊠ **Yes**
　❸ **Enter Handset Code and press** ◉
　　When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.
　　• When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.
　　▌Press ◉ **Cancel** to cancel.
　　▌Press ⊙ to end.

Receiving Folders

Receive folders from compatible devices and save to handset Data Folder.

- 804SH does not support sending folders.
- 804SH receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or a folder with the same name already exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- For sender's procedures, see the device manual.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⬙)* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ *Switch On/Off*

1 Choose *On* and press ⬤

Bluetooth is activated and handset returns to Standby.

2 When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears

■ To accept connection request from unpaired devices, press 🖂 ▐ Yes ▐ ➡ Enter Authorisation Code ➡ Press ⬤

3 Press 🖂 ▐ Yes ▐

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts.
When finished, handset returns to Standby.

■ If a folder with the same name already exists, press 🖂 ▐ Yes ▐ or ⬔ ▐ No ▐.
■ Press ⬔ ▐ Cancel ▐ to cancel.
■ Press 🕾 to end.

Connecting Handsfree Devices

Pair with handsfree devices beforehand (see **P.10-22**).

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (⬙)* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ *Paired Devices*

1 Press ⬙

List of paired handsfree devices appears.

2 Select a device and press ⬤

The device is connected and ☑ (checked) appears.

■ When transmission is in progress, press 🖂 ▐ Yes ▐.
■ To disconnect, select a device ➡ Press ⬤
■ To rename paired devices, select one ➡ Press 🖂 ▐ Options ▐ ➡ Select *Change Name* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Enter name ➡ Press ⬤

Sound Output

■ Switch sound output between handset and handsfree devices.

While talking on the phone, press 🖂 ▐ Options ▐ ➡ Select *Transfer Audio* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *To Handset* or *To Bluetooth* ➡ Press ⬤

- Select *To Handset* to talk on handset.
- If *To Bluetooth* is selected while a handsfree device is not connected, list of paired handsfree devices appears.

Note ▶ • While talking on handsfree devices, adjust volume on the device.
• Place calls from handsfree devices while handset is in Standby.

Tip ▶ • Devices marked with ☑ reconnect to handset when placing or receiving calls.
• ☐ indicates that the device is not selected. When ☐ is set to the connected device, a confirmation appears.

Bluetooth Settings

Device Name	Specify a Bluetooth name for handset

Default 804SH

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* (◌) ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *Bluetooth Settings* ▶ *Device Name*

Enter name ▶ **Press** ●
• Enter up to 16 characters. (Pictographs are not available.)

Bluetooth Timeout	Set idle time before Bluetooth is deactivated

Default No Timeout

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* (◌) ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *Bluetooth Settings* ▶ *Bluetooth Timeout*

Select time ▶ **Press** ●
☐ To cancel, select *No Timeout* ▶ Press ●

Handsfree Setting	Select whether to talk handsfree when placing calls from handset

Default Handsfree mode

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* (◌) ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *Bluetooth Settings* ▶ *Handsfree Setting*

Select *Private mode* or *Handsfree mode* ▶ Press ●
• When placing calls from handsfree devices, only handsfree conversation is available regardless of the setting.

OPP Authentication	Select whether or not to require Authorisation Code for file transfers

Default On

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* (◌) ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *Bluetooth Settings* ▶ *OPP Authentication*

Choose *On* (require) or *Off* ▶ Press ●

Encode Contact	Encode Phone Book when sending entries

Default Off

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* (◌) ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *Bluetooth Settings* ▶ *Encode Contact*

Choose *On* or *Off* ▶ Press ●

My Phone Details	Open Bluetooth-related handset properties

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* (◌) ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *Bluetooth Settings*

Select *My Phone Details* ▶ Press ●

Infrared

Getting Started

Infrared is a wireless technology that allows 804SH to communicate with other compatible devices (PCs, mobile phones, etc.).

Precautions

- Align Infrared Ports within 20 centimetres with no obstructions between handsets.

Within 20 cm
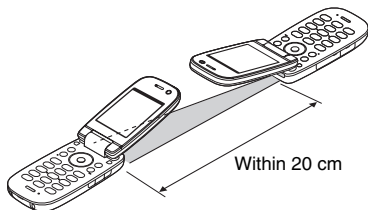
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Transfers in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment may fail.
- Dust/oil may impair file transfers; clean Infrared Ports with a soft cloth beforehand.
- Infrared transfers are disabled while sending/receiving mail or using Web.

- 804SH complies with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.

  Tip ▶ When transfer fails, ***Device not found. Reconnect?*** appears. Take the precautions on the left and press ⊜ **Yes** to try again.

Authorisation Code

■ Authorisation Codes (four digits) are specific for infrared transfers. All File transfers are possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.

Transferring Files via Infrared

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer files/entries one by one. Received files/entries are saved to corresponding functions.
All File Transfer	Transfer all files/entries by function
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. Folders are saved to Data Folder. (804SH does not support sending folders.)

Note ▶ • Transfers are disabled while using Web or Media Player, while editing mail or files, etc.
• Some entries in Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Text Templates and Bookmarks may not be saved in whole or part.

Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	All File transfer includes My Details. Picture setting may be lost depending on the image.
Calendar	Available	1	In One File transfers, Reminder tone and Secret Mode settings are lost. Entries with start date/time that cannot be set on 804SH are lost.
Tasks	Available	1	In One File transfers, Reminder tone and Secret Mode settings are lost. Entries with due date/time that cannot be set on 804SH are overwritten with the date/time of transfer.
Text Templates	2	Available	
Bookmarks	2	Available	Entries with the same title as the existing ones are lost. In One File transfers, received entries are saved to Data Folder (Other Documents) as an unknown file.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Data Folder	Available	3	Files or sub folders in DCIM folder and copy protected files cannot be transferred.

[1] In All File transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from *Appointments/Tasks*.

[2] Only receiving files/entries is supported.

[3] Receive folders one by one into handset Data Folder.

Tip ▶ • Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
• Transfer files in Memory Card Data Folder one by one. Files in DCIM folder cannot be transferred.

One File Transfer

■Sending

Send one file or entry from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks or Data Folder (see left and above).

1. **Select a file or entry and press ⊚ Options**
2. **Select *Send*, *Send Entry* or *Send My Card* and press ●**
3. **Select *Via Infrared* and press ●**
4. **Prepare recipient device**
5. **Press ⊚ Yes**
   Offline Mode is set and transfer starts.
   When finished, file or entry list returns.

■Receiving

1 Select *On (5 min.)* and press ⦿

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.
• Acquire infrared transmission within five minutes.

2 When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears

3 Press ⊚ ▮Yes▮

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts.
■ Press ⓞ ▮Cancel▮ to cancel.
■ Press ⓐ to end.

4 Confirmation appears when file or entry is received

5 Press ⊚ ▮Yes▮ to save

■ To cancel transfer, press ⓞ ▮No▮ ➡ Press ⊚ ▮Yes▮

All File Transfer

■Sending

1 Select *Send All* and press ⦿

2 Press ⊚ ▮Yes▮

Offline Mode is set.

3 Enter Handset Code and press ⦿

4 Select an item and press ⦿

5 Prepare recipient device

6 Enter Authorisation Code and press ⦿

Transfer starts. When finished, Send All menu returns.
■ For Phone Book, *Picture data in Phone Book transfer?* appears. Press ⊚ ▮Yes▮ or ⓞ ▮No▮.

■Receiving

1 Select *On (5 min.)* and press ⦿

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.
• Acquire infrared transmission within five minutes.

2 When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears

3 Press ⊚ ▮Yes▮

Offline Mode is set.

4 Enter Authorisation Code and press ⦿

• Enter the same Authorisation Code as sender's.

5 Transfer starts and confirmation appears

■ Press ⓞ ▮Cancel▮ to cancel.
■ Press ⓐ to end.

6 *Adding Entries*

❶ Select *As New Items* and press ⦿

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.
■ Press ⓞ ▮Cancel▮ to cancel.
■ Press ⓐ to end.

Overwriting Existing Entries

1 Select *Delete All & Save* and press ●

2 Press ✉ Yes

3 Enter Handset Code and press ●

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.
- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.
  - ▌ Press ⊙ Cancel to cancel.
  - ▌ Press 🔚 to end.

Receiving Folders

Receive folders from compatible devices and save to handset Data Folder.

- 804SH does not support sending folders.
- 804SH receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or a folder with the same name already exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- For sender's procedures, see the device manual.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (☺)* ➡ *Infrared* ➡ *Switch On/Off*

1 Select *On (5 min.)* and press ●

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.
- Acquire infrared transmission within five minutes.

2 When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears

3 Press ✉ Yes

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts.
When finished, handset returns to Standby.
- ▌ If a folder with the same name already exists, press ✉ Yes or ⊙ No.
- ▌ Press ⊙ Cancel to cancel.
- ▌ Press 🔚 to end.

Mass Storage

- Activate Mass Storage and connect 804SH to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from 804SH.
- Activating Mass Storage activates Offline Mode.
- Mass Storage is not available when battery is low (▭ or ▯).

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Connectivity (☺)*

1 Select *Mass Storage* and press ●

Calling not available during operation, OK? appears.

2 Press ✉ Yes

3 Connect 804SH to a PC via USB Cable

- If it is already connected, remove it then reconnect it.

4 Press ⊙ Back to exit

5 Press ✉ Yes

- Safely remove handset (recognised as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

Network Settings

See **P.2-15** for information on Select Service.

Select Network	Select a Network to connect

<div align="right">Default Automatic</div>

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Network Settings (◌)* ▶ *Select Network*

Select *Manual* ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select a Network** ▶ **Press** ⬤

■ To change Network automatically, select *Automatic* ▶ Press ⬤

• Use default setting unless connecting to a specific Network.

Set Preferred	Set priority of Networks to be selected when *Automatic* is set in Select Network

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Network Settings (◌)* ▶ *Select Network* ▶ *Set Preferred*

Inserting Network
Select a place to insert ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select** *Insert* ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select a Network** ▶ **Press** ⬤

• Network is inserted above the selected entry.

Adding Network to the End
Press ⬤ ▶ **Select** *Add to end* ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select a Network** ▶ **Press** ⬤

Deleting Network
Select a Network ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select** *Delete* ▶ **Press** ⬤

Add, Edit & Delete	Add, edit or delete Networks

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Network Settings (◌)* ▶ *Select Network* ▶ *Add New Network*

Adding Network
Select *Add* ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Enter a country code** ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Enter a Network code** ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Enter name** ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select** *Select network type* ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select a Network type** ▶ **Press** ⬤

• Add up to 5 Networks.
• After selecting *Add New Network* and pressing ⬤, Network list appears if Network has already been added. In this case, press ⬤ again and perform above operations.
• Use up to 3 digits for country code and Network code, and up to 25 single-byte alphanumerics for name.

Editing Network
Select a Network ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select** *Change* ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Edit settings**

• Edit in the same manner as in "Adding Network" above.

Deleting Network
Select a Network ▶ **Press** ⬤ ▶ **Select** *Delete* ▶ **Press** ⬤

Network Info	Check Network Information

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Network Settings (◌)*

Select *Network Info* ▶ **Press** ⬤

Internet Settings

Under normal conditions, use the default settings. Create and use custom Profiles to access specific hosts.

Custom Profile Items

■ Web/MMS/Streaming Profiles

See **P.10-34** for procedures.

■ Web Settings

Setting	Note
Profile Name	Up to 60 single-byte alphanumerics
Proxy	Select from the list (available when Use Proxy is *On*)
Use Proxy	Choose *On* or *Off*
Access Point	Select from the list (available when Use Proxy is *Off*)
Home	Up to 128 single-byte characters (available when Use Proxy is *Off*)

■ MMS Accounts

Setting	Note
Profile Name	Up to 60 single-byte alphanumerics
Proxy	Select from the list
Relay Server URL	Up to 128 single-byte characters

■ Streaming Settings

Setting	Note
Profile Name	Up to 60 single-byte alphanumerics
Proxy Address	Up to 64 digits
Proxy Port Number	1 - 65535
Access Point	Select from the list

■ Proxy Profiles

See **P.10-35** for procedures.

Setting	Note
Proxy Name	Up to 60 single-byte alphanumerics
Proxy Address	Up to 64 digits
Access Point	Select from the list
Home	Up to 128 single-byte characters
Port Number	1 - 65535
Authentication Type	HTTP-BASIC or HTTP-DIGEST
User Name	Up to 16 single-byte characters
Password	Up to 16 single-byte characters

■ Access Point Profiles

See **P.10-35** for procedures.

Setting	Note
Access Point Name	Up to 60 single-byte alphanumerics
APN	Up to 64 digits
Authentication Type	NONE, PAP or CHAP
User Name	Up to 32 single-byte characters
Password	Up to 16 single-byte characters
DNS	Up to 15 digits
Linger Time	1 - 99999 seconds

Creating & Editing Custom Profiles

Web & Streaming

See **P.10-33** for available items.

Create New — Create new Profiles for Web or Streaming connections

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Network Settings (⚙)* ➡ *Internet Setting*

Select *Web Settings* or *Streaming Settings* ➡ Press ●
➡ Select *Create New* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡
Press ● ➡ Enter text/select an item ➡ Press ● ➡
Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Set* ➡ Press ●

Activate — Select a Profile to be used for Web or Streaming connections

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Network Settings (⚙)* ➡ *Internet Setting*

Select *Web Settings* or *Streaming Settings* ➡ Press ●
➡ Select a Profile ➡ Press ●

Edit — Edit custom Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Network Settings (⚙)* ➡ *Internet Setting*

Select *Web Settings* or *Streaming Settings* ➡
Press ● ➡ Select a Profile ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡
Select *Edit* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ●
➡ Edit contents ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡
Select *Set* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☺ Yes

Copy — Copy custom Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Network Settings (⚙)* ➡ *Internet Setting*

Select *Web Settings* or *Streaming Settings* ➡ Press ●
Select a Profile ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Copy* ➡
Press ● ➡ Enter Profile Name (see P.10-33) ➡ Press ●

Delete — Delete Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Network Settings (⚙)* ➡ *Internet Setting*

Select *Web Settings* or *Streaming Settings* ➡
Press ● ➡ Select a Profile ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡
Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☺ Yes

MMS Accounts

See **P.10-33** for available items.

Create New — Create new Profiles for MMS connections

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *MMS Settings* ➡ *MMS Accounts* ➡ *Create New*

Select an item ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter text/select an item ➡
Press ● ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Set* ➡ Press ●

Activate — Select a Profile to be used for MMS connections

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *MMS Settings* ➡ *MMS Accounts*

Select a Profile ➡ Press ●

Edit — Edit custom Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *MMS Settings* ➡ *MMS Accounts*

Select a Profile ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Edit* ➡
Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ● ➡ Edit
contents ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select
***Set* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☺ Yes**

Copy	Copy custom Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging ➡ Mail Settings ➡ MMS Settings ➡ MMS Accounts*

Select a Profile ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Copy* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Profile Name (see P.10-33) ➡ Press ●

Delete	Delete Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging ➡ Mail Settings ➡ MMS Settings ➡ MMS Accounts*

Select a Profile ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ Yes

Proxy & Access Point

See **P.10-33** for available items.

Create New	Create new Proxy/Access Point Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Settings ➡ Network Settings (⊙) ➡ Internet Setting*

Select *Proxy Settings* or *APN Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Create New* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter text/select an item ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Set* ➡ Press ●

Edit	Edit custom Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Settings ➡ Network Settings (⊙) ➡ Internet Setting*

Select *Proxy Settings* or *APN Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a Profile ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ● ➡ Edit contents ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Set* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ Yes

Copy	Copy custom Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Settings ➡ Network Settings (⊙) ➡ Internet Setting*

Select *Proxy Settings* or *APN Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a Profile ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Copy* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter name (see P.10-33) ➡ Press ●

Delete	Delete custom Profiles

Main Menu ▶ *Settings ➡ Network Settings (⊙) ➡ Internet Setting*

Select *Proxy Settings* or *APN Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a Profile ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ Yes

Additional Settings

Re-Provisioning	When Profiles are changed, perform Retrieve NW Info and update the settings

Main Menu ▶ *Settings ➡ Network Settings (⊙) ➡ Internet Setting ➡ Re-Provisioning*

Retrieving Network Information
Select *Retrieve NW Info* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ Yes
Updating
Select *Execute Pending* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ● twice
● If required, enter the passcode and press ●.

| **Clear DNS Cache** | Clear Vodafone live! Sever addresses stored on handset |

Select *Clear DNS Cache* ▶ Press ⦿

| **White List** | Create/delete White List
Messages from listed addresses are always accepted |

Creating Entries

Press ⓒ ▐Yes▌ **▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Select *Create New* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Select *SMSC Address* or *SM Orig. Address* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Enter address ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Press ⓒ** ▐Options▌ **▶ Select *Set* ▶ Press ⦿**

• Enter up to 18 digits for SMSC Address and SM Orig. Address.

Deleting Entries

Press ⓒ ▐Yes▌ **▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ⓒ** ▐Options▌ **▶ Select *Delete* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Press ⓒ** ▐Yes▌

LBS (Location Based Service) Settings

| **LBS URL Setting** | Assign LBS URLs |

■Required when accessing specific hosts from Phone Book entries containing location info.

Select URL ▶ Press ⦿

▐ To view URL, press ⓒ ▐Options▌ ▶ Select *Display* ▶ Press ⦿
▐ To edit URL, press ⓒ ▐Options▌ ▶ Select *Edit* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Edit URL ▶ Press ⦿
  ■ URL saved in ① cannot be edited.
▐ To delete URLs, select one ▶ Press ⓒ ▐Options▌ ▶ Select *Delete* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Press ⓒ ▐Yes▌
  ■ URL saved in ① cannot be deleted.
▐ To add URL, select a blank entry ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Enter URL ▶ Press ⦿

| **Datum On/Off** | Choose whether or not to send your location info automatically upon request |

▐Default▌On

Choose *On* or *Off* ▶ Press ⦿ ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ⦿

Tools

Calendar

Organise daily, weekly, monthly and yearly schedule.

Save up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks (see **P.11-6**).

Opening Calendar

- Open Calendar in Month View or Week View.
- Calendar appears in Month View by default.

1 Select *Calendar* and press ●

Calendar of the current month opens.

■ If Clock is unset, set Time Zone ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter the date ➡ Press ●

■ To open Help (Key Assignments), press ☺ **Options** ➡ Select *Help* ➡ Press ●

■ Press ☺ **OK** to return.

Calendar Window
(Month View)

■Key Assignments

Key	Month View	Week View
(✳)	Open the previous month	Open the previous week
(#)	Open the next month	Open the next week
(0)	Toggle between Month View and Week View	
(5)	Select the current date	
(8)	Quick Entry (Icons)	-
⊙	Select the previous/next week	Select the previous/next time block
⊙	Select date	

Default View	Set to open Calendar in Month View or Week View

DefaultMonth View

Press ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Default View* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *Month View* **or** *Week View* ➡ **Press** ●

Set Holiday	Set Calendar date colour

DefaultSunday: Red, Saturday: Violet, Others: Black

By Days of the Week

Press ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Set Holiday* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *By Week* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a day** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a colour** ➡ **Press** ●

By Date

Select a date ➡ **Press** ☺ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Set Holiday* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *By Date* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a colour** ➡ **Press** ●

■ To use the colour set for the day of the week, select *Same as Week* ➡ Press ●

Quick Entry	Create new entry quickly by entering an icon

■ Available in Month View.

Select a date ➡ **Press** (8) ➡ **Select a category** ➡ **Press** ●

Tip ▶ To edit the entry, see **P.11-5**.

Saving Entries

1 Select a day and press ●

2 Select *<Add New Entry>* and press ●

3 Enter subject and press ⊙
- Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

4 Enter start date/time and press ⊙

5 Select *End:* and press ⊙

6 Enter end date/time and press ⊙

7 Select *Category:* and press ⊙

8 Select a category and press ⊙

9 Select *Reminder:* and press ⊙

10 Select *Reminder Time:* and press ⊙

11 *No Reminder*
> ❶ Select *No Reminder* and press ⊙
> *Setting Reminder*
> ❶ Select from *At Start Time* to *1 hour before*
> and press ⊙
> ▮ For custom Reminder Time, select *Other* ➡ Press ⊙
> ➡ Enter date/time ➡ Press ⊙
> ▮ To set tone/video and duration, see **P.11-4**.

12 Press ⊙ **OK**
> ▮ Repeat: see **P.11-4**

13 Select *Location:* and press ⊙

14 Enter location and press ⊙
- Enter up to 16 characters.

15 Select *Description:* and press ⊙

16 Enter schedule details and press ⊙
- Enter up to 128 characters.
- ▮ Secret: see **P.11-4**

New Entry
Window

17 Press ⊙ **Save**
The entry is saved.

Note ▶ When entries are transferred to other devices, date/time or other information may appear different depending on the recipient device.

Tip ▶ 🛗 (Reminder set) or 🛗 (Reminder unset) appears on scheduled day. (Indicator disappears after scheduled time.)

At Reminder Time

Reminder is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

- If 804SH is off but Wake-up Alarm (see **P.10-15**) is *On*, 804SH turns on at Reminder Time; Reminder activates and 804SH sounds/vibrates according to related settings.
- Image appears if System Graphics (see **P.10-3**) is set. However, SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Reminder

▮ Press ⊙ **Cancel**, ⊙ or ⌫.
- When handset was off at Reminder Time, *Switch Phone On?* appears. Press ⊠ **Yes** or ⊙ **No**.
  ■ Handset turns off after 20 seconds of inactivity.

Opening Entries

▮ While Reminder is activated, press ⊙ or ⊠ **View**. (Entries cannot be opened when handset was off at Reminder Time.)

Tip ▶
• If Reminder Time arrives during a call, Reminder will not be announced. Press $\textcircled{\scriptsize 5}$ after the call to reactivate Reminder.
• Active Reminder stops for incoming calls. Press $\textcircled{\scriptsize 5}$ after the call. Information window opens.

Calendar Options

Follow these steps after Step 12 on **P.11-3**. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone	Set a tone to sound at Reminder Time

Default Alert 1

Select *Reminder:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Assign Tone/ Video:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Assign Tone* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Preset Sounds* or *My Sounds* (Data Folder) ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a tone/file ➡ Press ⊜ Assign ➡ Press ⊙ OK
■ For *My Sounds*, select a file and press ● ➡ Press ⊙ OK
■ To play tones in Preset Sounds, select one and press ●.
　■ Press ● to stop.
■ To play files in My Sounds, select one and press ⊜ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ●
　■ Press ⊙ Back to stop.

Assign Video	Set a video file to play with Reminder

Select *Reminder:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Assign Tone/ Video:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Assign Video* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a video file ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ OK
■ To play video files, select one and press ⊜ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ●
　■ Press ⊙ Back to stop.

Duration	Set how long Reminder operates

Default 15 seconds

Select *Reminder:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Duration:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select time ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ OK
■ For custom Duration, select *Other* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter time ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ OK

Repeat	Assign schedule type (once only, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly) for each event

Default Once Only

Once Only Schedule
Select *Repeat:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Once Only* ➡ Press ●
Repetitive Schedule
Select *Repeat:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select from *Day* to *Every Year* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) ➡ Press ●
• Start date and time are reflected in the items. For *Month*, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.
• Repeat time is not available for *Every Year*; the schedule is repeated until deleted.
• Set Repeat time to *00* to repeat until deleted.

Secret	Restrict access to entries

Default Off

Select *Secret:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ●
• Activate handset Secret Mode (see **P.10-18**) to open/edit Secret Mode entries.

Opening Entries

1 Select a date and press ●

■ Alternatively, to specify date, press ☒ Options ➡ Select *Go to* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Enter Date* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter date ➡ Press ●

■ Alternatively, to open current date, press ☒ Options ➡ Select *Go to* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Today* ➡ Press ●

2 Select an entry and press ●

■ To send the entry via MMS, press ☒ Options ➡ Select *Send* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *As Message* ➡ Press ● ➡ Create and send message (Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**.)

3 Press ◉ Back to end

Memory Status

■ After Step 1, press ☒ Options ➡ Select *Memory Status* ➡ Press ●

Searching Entries

1 Press ☒ Options

2 Select *Find* and press ●

3 Enter search text and press ●

• Enter up to 32 characters.

4 Select an entry and press ●

Editing Entries

1 Select a date and press ●

2 Select an entry and press ☒ Options

3 Select *Edit* and press ●

4 Select an item and press ●

• For details, see procedure for saving entries.

5 When finished editing, press ◉ Save

Deleting Entries

This Appointment/ All This Day	Delete one entry or all entries of the day

One Entry

Select a date ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an entry ➡ Press ☒ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *This Appointment* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☒ Yes

All Entries of the Day

Select a date ➡ Press ☒ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *All This Day* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☒ Yes

■ Open Calendar in Month View for *All This Month* and Week View for *All This Week*.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Calendar*

Month

Select a month ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ●
➡ Select *All This Month* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊡ **Yes**

• *All This Month* appears only when there is an entry in the month.

Week

Select a week ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ●
➡ Select *All This Week* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊡ **Yes**

• *All This Week* appears only when there is an entry in the week.

| Up to Last Month/ Up to Last Week | Delete entries up to the end of the previous month or week |

■ Open Calendar in Month View for *Up to Last Month* and Week View for *Up to Last Week*.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Calendar*

Up to End of Previous Month

Select a month ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ●
➡ Select *Up to Last Month* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊡ **Yes**

• *Up to Last Month* appears only when there is an entry up to the end of the previous month.

Up to the End of Previous Week

Select a week ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete* ➡
Press ● ➡ Select *Up to Last Week* ➡ Press ● ➡
Press ⊡ **Yes**

• *Up to Last Week* appears only when there is an entry up to the end of the previous week.

| All Appointments | Delete all entries |

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Calendar*

Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select
All Appointments ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊡ **Yes**

Deleting Repetitive Entries

■ A confirmation appears except for *All Appointments*.
  To delete, press ⊡ **Yes**.
  ■ To retain repetitive entries, press ● **No**.

Tasks

Save event with deadlines.

• Check completed tasks (see **P.11-9**).

• Save up to 300 entries between Tasks and Calendar (see **P.11-2**)

Saving Entries

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tasks*

1 Select *<Add New Entry>* and press ●

2 Enter subject and press ●

• Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

3 Enter due date/time and press ●

4 Select *Reminder:* and press ●

5 Select *Reminder Time:* and press ●

6 *No Reminder*

■**Select *No Reminder* and press ⦿**

Setting Reminder

■**Select from *At Due Time* to *1 hour before* and press ⦿**

　■For custom Reminder Time, select *Other* ➡ Press ⦿
　➡ Enter date/time ➡ Press ⦿
　■To set tone/video and duration, see **P.11-8**.

7 Press ⦿ OK

8 Select *Description:* and press ⦿

9 Enter task details and press ⦿
• Enter up to 128 characters.
　■Secret: see **P.11-8**

10 Press ⦿ Save
The entry is saved.

New Entry
Window

At Reminder Time

Reminder is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

• If 804SH is off but Wake-up Alarm (see **P.10-15**) is *On*, 804SH turns on at Reminder Time; Reminder activates and 804SH sounds/vibrates according to related settings.
• Image appears if System Graphics is set (see **P.10-3**). However, SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Reminder Tone

■**Press ⦿ Cancel, ⌾ or ⌧.**
• When handset was off at Reminder Time, *Switch Phone On?* appears. Press ⦿ Yes or ⦿ No.
　■Handset turns off after 20 seconds of inactivity.

Opening Entries

■While Reminder is activated, press ⦿ or ⊠ View. (Entries cannot be opened when handset was off at Reminder Time.)

Tip ▶ • If Reminder Time arrives during a call, no tone will sound. Press ⌾ after the call to reactivate Reminder.
• Active Reminder stops for incoming calls. Press ⌾ after the call. Information window opens.

Tasks Options

Follow these steps after Step 7 on **P.11-7**. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone   Set a tone to sound at Reminder Time

_{Default}Alert 1

Select *Reminder:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Assign Tone/ Video:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Assign Tone* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Preset Sounds* or *My Sounds* (Data Folder) ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a tone/file ➡ Press ⊚ Assign ➡ Press ⦿ OK

▢ For *My Sounds*, select a file and press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ OK
▢ To play tones in Preset Sounds, select one and press ⦿.
  ■ Press ⦿ to stop.
▢ To play files in My Sounds, select one and press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⦿
  ■ Press ⦿ Back to stop.

Assign Video   Set a video file to play with Reminder

Select *Reminder:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Assign Tone/ Video:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Assign Video* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a video file ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ OK

▢ To play video files, select one and press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⦿
  ■ Press ⦿ Back to stop.

Duration   Set how long Reminder operates

_{Default}15 seconds

Select *Reminder:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Duration:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select time ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ OK

▢ For custom Duration, select *Other* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter time ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ OK

Secret   Restrict access to entries

_{Default}Off

Select *Secret:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ⦿

• Activate handset Secret Mode (see **P.10-18**) to open/edit Secret Mode entries.

Opening Entries

1 Select *Tasks* and press ⦿

▢ To open completed (checked) entries, use ⊙ to select ▢ (Completed Tasks).
▢ To open uncompleted (unchecked) entries, use ⊙ to select ▢ (Incomplete Tasks).

2 Select an entry and press ⦿

▢ To send the entry via MMS, press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Send* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *As Message* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Create and send message (Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**.)

3 Press ⦿ Back to end

Searching Entries

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Tasks*

1 Select an entry and press ☺ Options

2 Select *Find* and press ⦿

3 Enter search text and press ⦿
  • Enter up to 32 characters.

4 Select an entry and press ⦿

Editing Entries

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Tasks*

1 Select an entry and press ☺ Options

2 Select *Edit* and press ⦿

3 Select an item and press ⦿
  • For details, see procedure for saving entries.

4 When finished editing, press ⦿ Save

Deleting Entries

This Task   Delete one entry

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Tasks*

Select an entry ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *This Task* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ☺ Yes

All Tasks/ All Completed Tasks   Delete all tasks or all completed tasks

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Tasks*

All Tasks
  Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *All Tasks* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ☺ Yes
All Completed Tasks
  Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *All Completed Tasks* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ☺ Yes
  • *All Completed Tasks* appears only when there is a completed entry.

Tools

11

Alarm

Setting Alarm

Set Alarm to sound at a specific time each day or on specific days of the week. Save up to 5 Alarm settings.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Alarms*

1 **Select - - : - - and press ⊙**

2 **Enter time and press ⊙**

   ■ Alarm Options: see **P.11-11**

3 **Select *Repeat:* and press ⊙**

4 ***Daily***

   ❶ **Select *Every Day* and press ⊙**

   Specified Day of the Week

   ❶ **Select *Selected Days* and press ⊙**

      ■ To select all, press ⊚ `Options` ➡ Select *Select All* ➡ Press ⊙

   ❷ **Select a day of the week and press ⊙**

      The day is set and ☑ appears.

      • To cancel, highlight the selected day and press ⊙.

   ❸ **Repeat ❷ to select more**

   ❹ **Press ⊙ `OK` when finished**

   One Time Alarm

   ❶ **Select *Once Only* and press ⊙**

Alarm Settings

┌─────────────────┐
│ Set Alarm   │
│ Time: │
│ 07:00   │
│ Repeat: │
│ Every Day   │
│ Assign Tone/Video: │
│ Alert 1   │
│ Snooze: │
│ Every 5 min. ▼ │
│ Select ⊙ Save │
└─────────────────┘
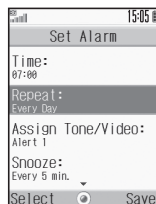
5 **Press ⊙ `Save`**

   Alarm is set.

   • For more settings, repeat Steps 1 - 5.

6 **Press ⊚ to exit**

   Handset returns to Standby and 🔔 appears.

At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

• If 804SH is off but Wake-up Alarm (see **P.10-15**) is *On*, 804SH turns on at Alarm Time; Alarm activates and 804SH sounds/vibrates according to related settings. However, if 804SH is shutting down at Alarm Time, 804SH restarts and Alarm activates within two minutes of shutdown time.

• Image appears if System Graphics is set (see **P.10-3**). However, SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Alarm

■ **Press ⊙ Cancel, ⌃ or (≡).**
- When handset was off at Alarm Time, *Switch Phone On?* appears. Press ⌨ Yes or ⊙ No.
  - Handset turns off after 20 seconds of inactivity.

Snooze

■ When Snooze (see **P.11-12**) is set, Alarm repeats at the set interval.
- When other Alarm Time arrives while *Switch Phone On?* appears, the other Alarm is activated.
- Accept incoming calls (except when handset was off at Alarm Time). After each call, press ⌃ to reactivate Snooze.
- If other Alarm Time arrives while Snoozing, the other Alarm is activated only after Snooze is cancelled.

■ To cancel Snooze, follow these steps while Alarm is activated or Snoozing.
  Press ⊙ Cancel, ⌃ or (≡) ➡ Press ⌨ Yes
- When handset was off at Alarm Time, *Switch Phone On?* appears. Press ⌨ Yes or ⊙ No.
  - Handset turns off after 20 seconds of inactivity.
- Snooze is cancelled automatically 60 minutes after initial Alarm Time.

Tip ▶
- If Alarm Time arrives during a call, no tone will sound. Press ⌃ after the call to reactivate Alarm.
- In Manner mode, volume depends on Manner settings (*Silent* by default).
- If Auto Power On Time and Alarm Time are the same, Alarm is activated after handset turns on.
- When handset turns on at Alarm Time with PIN Entry (see **P.10-16**) *On*, tone is fixed to *Alert 1* except when a tone in Preset Sounds is assigned.
- When battery is removed and reinstalled after Alarm is set, handset may not turn on at Alarm Time. To prevent this, turn handset on and then off.

Alarm Options

Follow these steps after Step 2 on **P.11-10**. After each setting, Alarm settings window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone   Set a tone to sound at Alarm Time

 Default Alert 1

Select *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select *Assign Tone* ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select *Preset Sounds* or *My Sounds* (Data Folder) ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Select a tone/file ➡ Press ⌨ Assign
  ■ For *My Sounds*, select a file and press ⊙.
  ■ To play tones in Preset Sounds, select one and press ⊙.
    - Press ⊙ to stop.
  ■ To play files in My Sounds, select one and press ⌨ Options
    ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⊙
    - Press ⊙ Back to stop.

| **Assign Video** | Set a video file to play with Alarm |

Select *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Assign Video* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a video file ➡ Press ⦿

■ To play video files, select one and press ⊚ **Options** ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⦿
■ Press ⦿ **Back** to stop.

| **Snooze** | Set Alarm to activate at set intervals after initial Alarm Time |

DefaultEvery 5 minutes
Select *Snooze:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select an interval ➡ Press ⦿

■ For custom intervals, select *Other* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter interval ➡ Press ⦿

| **Alarm Volume** | Set volume from seven levels |

DefaultLevel 5
Select *Alarm Volume:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Use ⦿ to adjust level ➡ Press ⦿

| **Duration** | Set how long Alarm operates |

Default10 seconds
Select *Duration:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select duration ➡ Press ⦿

■ For custom Duration, select *Other* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter time ➡ Press ⦿

| **Vibration** | Set handset to vibrate at Alarm Time |

DefaultOn
Select *Vibration:* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *On*, *Link to Sound* or *Off* ➡ Press ⦿

• For details on *Link to Sound*, see **P.10-11** "Vibration".

Cancelling & Reactivating Alarm

| **Switch Off** | Cancel Alarm and retain the settings |

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Alarms*

Select an entry ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Switch Off* ➡ Press ⦿

• 🔔 disappears.
• Reactivate Alarm to use the same settings.

| **Switch On** | Reactivate Alarm with the same settings, or change current settings |

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Alarms*

Select an entry ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Switch On* ➡ Press ⦿

■ To change settings, select an entry ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Edit* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Edit settings
■ For details, see procedure for saving entries.

Deleting Alarm

| **Reset Alarm** | Delete Alarm settings one by one |

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Alarms*

Select an entry ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Reset Alarm* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⊚ Yes

| **Clear All** | Delete all Alarm settings |

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Alarms*

Select *Clear All* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⊚ Yes

Auto Power On

Use Auto Power On to activate handset power automatically at a specific time each day. Auto Power On is *Off* by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Auto Power On* ➡ *Switch On/Off*

1 Choose *On* and press ⦿
██ To cancel Auto Power On, choose *Off* ➡ Press ⦿ (Omit the next steps.)

2 Select *Set Time* and press ⦿

3 Enter time and press ⦿

Note ▶ When Auto Power On time arrives while handset is turned on for Alarm, handset does not turn on completely until Alarm stops or Snooze is cancelled.

Tip ▶ When battery is removed and reinstalled after Auto Power On is set, handset may not turn on at Auto Power On Time. To prevent this, turn handset on and then off.

World Clock

Display local date/time (see **P.10-13**) and the date/time of another area in the world.

- Select from preset Time Zones or specify a new one; enter area name and time difference between new and local areas.
- To set World Clock to appear in Standby, see **P.10-14** "Display Date & Time" (Show Clock).
- Time Zone is set to *Tokyo* by default.

Setting Time Zone & Daylight Saving

Activate Daylight Saving to advance the selected area's time by one hour.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *World Clock* ➡ *Edit (⊜)*

1 *Time Zone*
██ **Select *Set Time Zone* and press ⦿**
██ **Use ⊙ to specify an area and press ⦿**
██ To add Time Zone, in Time Zone setting window, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Set Custom Zone* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Use ⟳ to select **+** or **-** ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Enter time difference ➡ Press ⦿

Daylight Saving
██ **Select *Daylight Saving* and press ⦿**
██ **Choose *On* and press ⦿**
██ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ⦿

Opening World Clock

1 **Select *World Clock* and press ●**

World Clock
Tokyo
My Home City
15:05
2006/03/15 Wed

Rome
The Other City
07:05
2006/03/15 Wed
Edit   Back

— Local Time Zone

— World Time Zone

Tip ▶ • To change local Time Zone, see **P.10-14**.
• To set World Clock to appear in Standby, select *World Clock* for Show Clock (see **P.10-14** "Display Date & Time).

Calculator

Use Calculator for basic arithmetic (up to 12 digits) and percentage calculation, or currency conversion (Money Converter).
Key Assignments:

+ (Add)	⊙	CM (Clear Memory)	(≡≡)
- (Subtract)	⊙	RM (Recall Memory)	(♪)
x (Multiply)	⊙	M+ (Add Memory)	⊙[1]
÷ (Divide)	⊙	. (Decimal)	(✳)
= (Equal)	●	+/- (Switch)	(#)
C.CE (Clear)	(≡≡)	% (Percent)	⊙[2]

[1]Not available when result is *0*.   [2]Press ⊙ **Options** and select *%*.

1 **Select *Calculator* and press ●**
Calculator opens.
• Use Keypad to enter digits, and the keys in the table on the left for calculation.
■ Shortcut: Enter digits in Standby ➡ Press (♪)
■ To copy the result, press ⊙ **Options** ➡ Select *Copy* ➡ Press ●
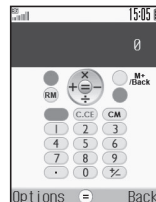
2 **Press ⊙ to exit**

Tip ▶ • Entered numbers, results and numbers saved in Memory are not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
• Clear Memory before starting Memory calculations.
• Numbers saved in Memory remain even if Calculator is closed, but are cleared when handset power is turned off.

Money Converter

■ To change exchange rate, open Calculator and follow these steps.
Press ⊙ Options ➡ **Select *Money Converter*** ➡
Press ● ➡ **Select *Exchange Rate*** ➡ **Press ●** ➡
Select *Domestic* or *Foreign* ➡ **Press ●** ➡ **Enter rate** ➡ **Press ●**
• Exchange rate is *1* for both conversions by default.
■ To convert foreign currencies, follow these steps.
Enter amount of money and press ⊙ Options ➡
Select *Money Converter* ➡ **Press ●** ➡ **Select *to Domestic* or *to Foreign*** ➡ **Press ●**
• Conversion is based on the preset exchange rate.

Voice Recorder

Use handset microphone to record short voice memos and save files on handset or Memory card; record and save longer recordings on Memory Card.

• Modes:

	Recording Time	**Storage Media**
For Message	Up to three minutes (attachable to MMS)	Handset or Memory Card[1]
Extended Voice	Up to approximately 10 hours	Memory Card[2]

[1]Specify storage media before recording, or set 804SH to ask each time; when set to ask, always record with Memory Card inserted.
[2]Insert Memory Card to record in Extended Voice mode.

• *For Message* is set by Default.

Preparation

- When battery is low (⬚ or 🔋), Voice Recorder will not record. If battery runs low while recording in Extended Voice mode, *Low Battery* appears and Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Conversations during calls cannot be recorded.
- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

Recording

Main Menu ▶ *Tools*

1 **Select *Voice Recorder* and press** ●

▢ To switch mode, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Record Time* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *For Message* or *Extended Voice* ➡ Press ●

▢ To switch storage media, see **P.11-16**.

2 **Press** ●
Recording starts.

3 *For Message*

1 Press ● **to stop**

• Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached.

▢ To play the recording, select *Playback* ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ⊜ **Pause** to pause.
  ■ Press ⊙ **Back** to return.

▢ To start over without saving, press ⊙ **Cancel** ➡ Repeat from Step 2

▢ To send via MMS, select *Save and Send* ➡ Press ● ➡ Create and send message (Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**.)
  ■ When *Ask Each Time* is selected in *Save Rec. to* setting, select *To Phone Memory* or *To Memory Card* ➡ Press ●

2 Select *Save* and press ●

Recording is saved to handset or Memory Card.

▢ When *Ask Each Time* is selected in *Save Rec. to* setting, select *To Phone Memory* or *To Memory Card* ➡ Press ●

Extended Voice

1 Press ● **to stop**

Recording is saved to Memory Card.

Note ▶ • Avoid shocks to 804SH; may cause noise or skipping.
  • Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Tip ▶ • Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Voice Recorder stops/closes.
  • Attach saved Voice file or record voice directly from Mail Composition windows (see **P.14-9**).

Playback

Play sounds from handset speaker, or use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones (see **P.7-8**).

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Voice Recorder*

1 **Press ⓒ Options**

2 **Select *My Sounds* and press ●**
  ■ Use ⊙ to toggle between handset and Memory Card.

3 **Select a file and press ●**
  Playback starts.
  ■ Use ⓢ (up) or ⓠ (down) to adjust volume.

```
                    15:05
     Voice Player
 ♪ voice0001

                 00:00:02
 ►
 Pause    ❚❚       Back
```
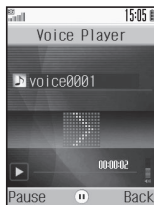
Deleting Files

■ Follow these steps after Step 2 on the left.
  Select a file ➡ Press ⓒ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⓒ Yes

Editing File Names

■ Files are named automatically. To rename, follow these steps after Step 2 on the left.
  Select a file ➡ Press ⓒ Options ➡ Select *Rename* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter name ➡ Press ●

Incoming Calls/Mail during Playback

■ Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.
■ An icon appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

Recording Setting

Save Rec. to	Select storage media for **For Message**

DefaultHandset

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Voice Recorder*

Press ⓒ Options ➡ Select *Save Rec. to* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Phone Memory*, *Memory Card* or *Ask Each Time* ➡ Press ●

• Set to *Ask Each Time* to select media after every recording.

Tools
11

Barcode

Scan printed barcodes with mobile camera or download QR Codes via Web or MMS.

- Scan UPC (JAN) or QR Codes. Handset automatically detects code type and reads data.
- In Continuous mode, scan up to 50 UPC (JAN) or 16 QR Codes at one time. In some cases, continuous scans may be disrupted depending on barcode data or data size.
- Zoom is not available.

Note ▶ • Scan may fail if the barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Use Mobile Light when scanning barcodes indoors.
- Capture one barcode at a time; otherwise scan may fail.

Tip ▶ • A UPC (Universal Product Code) or JAN (Japanese Article Number) is a series of varying width vertical lines (bars) and spaces. Bars and spaces together are elements, combinations of which represent different numbers. 804SH cannot read other one-dimensional barcodes (ITF Code, Code39, Codabar/NW-7, etc.).
- A QR (Quick Response) Code is a matrix symbology consisting of an array of nominally square cells, which allows omni-directional reading of up to 7,366 alpha-numerics and byte data, as well as kanji and kana.

1 Frame barcode in the centre of Display

- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.
- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector (see **P.6-4**) to Macro (🌷).
- ■ Use ⊙ to adjust brightness.
- ■ Press ⌗ to use Mobile Light.
- ■ To activate or cancel Continuous mode, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ Select *Continuous Scan* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ⦿
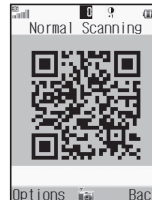
2 Press ⦿

Mobile camera scans the barcode.
- If recognition takes time, move handset slowly and adjust the distance from barcode.
- ■ Press ⊙ **Cancel** to stop scan ➡ Start over from Step 1

3 Barcode recognition tone sounds and scan results appear

- ■ Using Scan Results: see **P.11-18**
- ■ To start over, press ⊙ **Back** ➡ Press ⊜ **Yes** ➡ Perform from Step 1
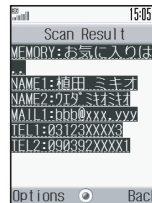
■ After scanning, *Scan completed. Scan new?* appears.
To scan next code, press ⓒ **Yes** ➡ **Frame the code on Display** ➡ **Press** ⦿
To exit, press ⓞ **No** ➡ **Scan results appear**

Split Data

■ After scanning, *Split data. Scan next symbol?* appears.
To scan next code, press ⓒ **Yes** ➡ **Frame the code on Display** ➡ **Press** ⦿
To cancel, press ⓞ **No** ➡ **Press** ⓒ **Yes**
■ Data will not be saved until all split data is scanned.
■ The scanning status appears on the first line of Display. For example, 🖩 indicates that 1 of 4 codes has been scanned.

■**Using Scan Results**

Place Calls[1]	Select a number starting with *TEL:*[2] ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ The number appears ➡ Press 🕽
Send Mail[3]	Select a mail address including *@* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Complete and send message (perform from Step 6 on **P.14-7**.)
Quote & Send Mail	Press ⓒ **Options** ➡ Select *Send Message* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Create and send message (perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**.) ■ To use a part of text, press ⓒ **Options** in Send Message window ➡ Select *Cut* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select the first character of text ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select the end of text ➡ Press ⦿
Save to Phone Book[1, 3]	Select a number starting with *TEL:*[2] or a mail address including *@* ➡ Press ⓒ **Options** ➡ Select *Save to Ph.Book* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Perform Step 4 on **P.4-7**.
Access Mobile Internet Sites[4]	Select a URL starting with *http://* or *rtsp://* ➡ Press ⦿ (Handset connects to the Network.)
Save to Data Folder (Images & Melodies)	Select an image or melody file ➡ Press ⓒ **Options** ➡ Select *To Data Folder* ➡ Press ⦿

[1]Available when text is in *TEL: ✱* format.
[2]Text strings of 10 to 32 digits starting with 0 are recognised as phone numbers.
[3]Available when text is in *✱@✱* format.
[4]Available when text is in *http://✱* or *rtsp://✱* format.
• ✱ represents one or more alphanumerics.

Saving		Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **Save** ➡ Press ● • Save up to 10 messages. • To open saved items, see **P.11-20** "Scanned Results".
Copy Text	**Text**	Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **Copy** ➡ Press ● ➡ Select the first character of text ➡ Press ● ➡ Select the end of text ➡ Press ●
	URL[4]	Select a URL starting with **http://** or **rtsp://** ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **Copy URL** ➡ Press ●
	Mail Address[3]	Select a mail address including **@** ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **Copy Address** ➡ Press ●
	Phone Number[1]	Select a number starting with **TEL:**[2] ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **Copy Telephone** ➡ Press ●
Use for System Graphics		Select an image ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **As System** ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ●
Wallpaper		Select an image ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **As Wallpaper** ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ●
Open Images or Play Melodies		Select an image or melody file ➡ Press ●
Open Properties		Select an image or melody file ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **Property** ➡ Press ●

[1]Available when text is in **TEL: ⁄** format.

[2]Text strings of 10 to 32 digits starting with 0 are recognised as phone numbers.

[3]Available when text is in **⁄@⁄** format.

[4]Available when text is in **http://⁄** or **rtsp://⁄** format.

• ⁄ represents one or more alphanumerics.

Tip ▶ When **MEMORY:** or **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book Details or SMS/MMS messages. However, text after an invalid character is not underlined and is not copied.

Scanning during Text Entry Scan barcodes during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press ⊡ Options ➡ Select Scan ➡ Press ● ➡ Select Scan Code ➡ Press ● ➡ Frame barcode in the centre of Display ➡ Press ● twice

　■ To use a part of text, press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select **Cut** ➡ Press ● ➡ Select the first character of text ➡ Press ● ➡ Select the end of text ➡ Press ●

Note ▶ Barcodes/text cannot be scanned when:
　• Entering text during a call
　• Entering text in Reading window (E-Book)
　• V-application is active
　• Entering URL for streaming

Tools

11

Open Barcode	Read saved barcode images in Data Folder

Select a barcode image ➡ Press ⦿
- For split data, press ⊚ **Yes** to scan next code.
  - To cancel, press ⦿ **No** ➡ *Delete all information, OK?* appears ➡ Press ⊚ **Yes**
- When scanning fails, press ⊚ **Yes** ➡ Select next barcode image manually ➡ Press ⦿

Note ▶ • Resized QR Codes may be invalid.
• When invalid, *This data may be incorrect.* appears.

Scanned Results	Open files saved in Scanned Results

Select a file ➡ Press ⦿
- Opened results cannot be re-saved.
- Some files such as large images may not open.

Create QR Codes

Create QR Codes from entered text, Phone Book, Pictures, Sound & Ringtones, and Text Templates.
- Save up to 513 digits, 131 kanji or the data equivalent thereof within a single QR Code.
- Large items are divided into maximum of 16 QR Codes.
- Created QR Codes are saved to Data Folder (Pictures). To open them, see **P.9-4**.

Phone Book	Encode name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses and note

Select an entry ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ QR Code appears ➡ Press ⦿
- Only name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses and note are encoded.

Text Input	Enter and encode text

Enter text ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ QR Code appears ➡ Press ⦿

Data Folder	Encode melody/image files or Text Templates in Data Folder

Select a folder ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ QR Code appears ➡ Press ⬤

Switching Storage Media
■ **While created QR Code appears, press ⬚ Options ➡ Select *Save To* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ Select *Handset* or *Memory Card* ➡ Press ⬤**

Attaching to MMS Mail
■ **While created QR Code appears, press ⬚ Options ➡ Select *Send As* ➡ Press ⬤ ➡ See P.14-6**

Incoming Calls while Creating QR Code
■ Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Text Scanner

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or roman letters) with mobile camera.

- Scan up to 256 characters continuously.
- Scan up to 60 single-byte characters within 3 lines. Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Some symbols may not be read.
- Text mode is set to *Auto* each time Text Scanner is activated. Change the mode if text is distorted in *Auto* (such as white text in black background).
- Zoom is not available.

Note ▶
- Text Scanner will not activate if music is playing; when *Stop music?* appears, press ⬚ **Yes** to proceed.
- Text Scanner will not activate if a V-application is active.
- When handset is too hot, *Heat warning: camera temporarily disabled.* appears and mobile camera remains off. If 804SH becomes too hot while in use, *Temperature is high. Closing camera...* appears and scanning ends.

1 Frame text on Display

- Adjust to frame text in [ ]. Letters at the ends may be distorted.
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from text.
- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector (see **P.6-4**) according to text size.

  ▌Use ⊙ to adjust brightness.

  ▌Press (#) to use Mobile Light.

  ▌To switch text mode, press ⊙ **Options** ▶ Select **Reversed Text** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **Auto**, **Normal** or **Reversed** ▶ Press ●
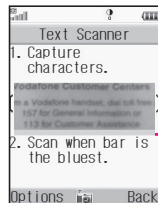
Focus Adjustment Bar (Better focus in darker blue)

2 Press ●

Text Scanner reads the text.

  ▌Press (⌫) to stop scan ▶ Start over from Step 1

3 Use ⊙ to select a line and press ●

- Text Scanner reads one line per scan.
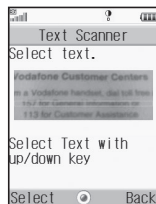
4 Scan results appear

804SH automatically registers scan results as a URL, Email Address, Phone Number or Text; if incorrect, change mode.

- If text exceeds limit, results appear with overage truncated.

  ▌To change mode, press ⊙ **Options** ▶ Select **Change Mode** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a type ▶ Press ● (Scan results and alternatives list change accordingly.)

  ▌To edit, press ⊙ **Options** ▶ Select **Select/Edit** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select the character to edit ▶ Select an alternative from the list or enter the correction directly from Keypad

  ▌To start over, press ⊙ **Back** ▶ Press ⊙ **Yes** ▶ Repeat from Step 1

5 Press ●

- To use scan results, see **P.11-18**.

Scanning More Text

▌**After Step 5, press ⊙ Options ▶ Select *Continue Part* or *Scan More* ▶ Press ●**

- **Continue Part**

  Select **Continue Part** to enter additional text. (Mode remains the same.)

- **Scan More**

  Select **Scan More** to enter text after a line break.

▌**Continue Part** and **Scan More** are disabled once 256 characters have been scanned.

In a text entry window, press ⊠ **Options** ➡ **Select**
Scan ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *Text Scanner* ➡ **Press** ●
➡ **Frame text in the centre of Display** ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select a line ➡ **Press** ● **twice**
• To change mode or edit scan results, see Step 4 on **P.11-22**.

Stopwatch

Record elapsed time for up to 24 hours (23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds) in 0.1-second increments.
Use lap time feature to segment elapsed time.

• Save times (including the last four lap times) to handset Text Templates.
• Stopwatch is disabled when battery is low (☐ or ▯). Stopwatch ends when battery is low.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Stopwatch*

1 Press ●

Stopwatch starts.

▮ To record Lap times, press ⊠ **LAP** .
  ■ The last four Lap times are recorded. The records are deleted when Stopwatch is cancelled.

2 Press ● to stop

▮ To save the records to Text Template, press ⊠ **Options** ➡
Select *Save to Template* ➡ Press ●
  ■ To check saved records, open Text Templates (see **P.9-14**).
▮ Press ● to resume.
▮ To clear the records, press ⊠ **Options** ➡ Select *Reset* ➡
Press ●

3 Press ● **Back** then ⊠ **Yes** to exit

Tip ▶ • Records are deleted when Stopwatch is cancelled. Save records to Text Templates.
• Stopwatch setting is not affected by incoming calls. Press ⌾ after the call to return to Stopwatch.
• Alarm is disabled while Stopwatch window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

Countdown Timer

Set Countdown Timer up to 60 minutes in 1-second increments. Alarm Tone sounds and Small Light flashes when set time elapses.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Countdown Timer*

1 Enter time (00:01 - 60:00) and press ●

• To edit entered time, use ⊙ to move cursor and enter correct time. If ● is already pressed, follow the steps below.
• When times over 60 minutes (60:00) are entered, the last set time returns.

▮ To change time, press ⊠ **Options** ➡ Select *Edit* ➡ Press ●
➡ Enter time ➡ Press ●

2 Press ●

Countdown starts.

3 Press ● to stop countdown

- Press ● to resume.
- To reset, stop countdown and press ⌨ **Options** ➡ Select *Reset* ➡ Press ●

4 Press ⊙ **Back** then ⌨ **Yes** to exit

Countdown Timer End

■ *Timer Expired* appears. Tone sounds according to *General Volume* setting.

- Alarm stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press ⊙ **Cancel** to stop manually.
- In Manner mode, Manner settings take priority.
- When the set timer time has elapsed during a call, *Timer Expired* appears after ☎ is pressed to end the call.

Tip ▶ • Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. Press ☎ after the call to return to Countdown Timer window.
- Alarm is disabled while Countdown Timer window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

Expenses Memo

Use Expenses Memo to add expenses, such as travel expenses.

- Enter up to 30 entries (up to 29,999,999.70 yen in total, 999,999.99 yen per entry).
- Entries cannot be saved during a call.

Add New Expense	Enter monetary figure and categorise it

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Expenses Memo* ➡ *Add New Expense*

Enter amount ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a category ➡ Press ●

- Shortcut: In Standby, enter amount ➡ Press ⊙ ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a category ➡ Press ●
- The entry date and figure are saved.
- If Clock is unset, entry date and time will be saved as **--/--/-- --:--**.

Totals	Check entries

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Expenses Memo*

Select *Totals* ➡ Press ●

- Use ⟨⟩ to scroll through entries.
- To change category, select an entry ➡ Press ⌨ **Options** ➡ Select *Change Category* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a category ➡ Press ●
  - To enter custom category name, select *Other* in category list ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter name (up to 14 characters) ➡ Press ● (Preset category names are not affected.)
- To change entry amount, select an entry ➡ Press ⌨ **Options** ➡ Select *Change Amount* ➡ Press ● ➡ Edit ➡ Press ●
- To delete an entry, select one ➡ Press ⌨ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete Item* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⌨ **Yes**
- To delete all entries, select an entry ➡ Press ⌨ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete All* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⌨ **Yes**

Edit Category	Rename categories

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ➡ *Expenses Memo*

Select *Edit Category* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a category ➡ Press ● ➡ Edit ➡ Press ●

- Enter up to 14 characters.

E-Books

Read XMDF or Text format E-Books from Memory Card.

- E-Book dictionaries turn 804SH into an electronic dictionary.
- Download titles via Sharp's *Space Town* (see **P.15-6**).
- Adjust Text Code for E-Books in other languages (see **P.11-26**).
- 804SH may not support some embedded sounds/images.
- E-Book folder cannot be accessed during Synchronisation.
- E-Books cannot be opened while Music Player is active or a V-application is paused.

Reading Content

Main Menu ▶ *Tools*

1 Select *E-Book* and press ⦿

Book contents list appears. (When you press ⦿ to close Reading window, the same page will open next time.)

▌ To read E-Books saved in other folders, press ⦿ **Options** ➡ Select *Switch Folders* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a folder ➡ Press ⦿

■ Selected item appears next time E-Book is selected.

2 Select an E-Book and press ⦿

- ○**%** indicates location of the current page.

▌ If the E-Book is password protected, enter password ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Reading window opens

▌ To see the title, author, etc., press ⦿ **Options** ➡ Select *Property* ➡ Press ⦿

■ Press ⦿ **OK** to exit.

3 Press ⦿ to close

- The last page opened will appear next time.

Note ▶ • E-Books automatically close for incoming calls, outgoing transmissions, Alarm Time, low battery, five minutes of inactivity, or Memory Card removal.
- Only *zbf*, *zbk*, *txt* or *text* files appear in contents list.
- Revised E-Books are not supported.

Key Assignments

▌ Operations vary by writing style as follows.

	Lateral	**Vertical**
⑤	Scroll up (by line)	Backward (by page)
⑫	Scroll down (by line)	Forward (by page)
⑤	Backward (by page)	Scroll left (by line)
⑨	Forward (by page)	Scroll right (by line)

Text Operations

■ Jump to the first or last page.
In Reading window, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Jump to Top* **or** *Jump to Bottom* ➡ **Press** ●

■ Move to a specific location.
In Reading window, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Shift %* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter location by percentage (00 - 99%)** ➡ **Press** ●

■ Select a chapter when a table of contents is contained.
In Reading window, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Contents* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a chapter** ➡ **Press** ●

■ Move back to link source or open link again.
Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Back* **or** *Next* ➡ **Press** ●

■ Return to E-Book list.
Press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Back to List* ➡ **Press** ●

■ See **P.11-27** to use Bookmarks.

Using Linked Info/Copying Text

■ Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs to place calls, send MMS or open Mobile Internet sites.
Select an item ➡ **Press** ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Jump to Link* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Press** ⊜ **Yes**

• Some linked information may not be usable.

■ Copy text (up to 20 characters).
In Reading window, press ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Copy* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.3-12**

■ Dictionary index text and search results cannot be copied.
■ Images and ruby annotations cannot be copied.

Reading Window Settings

■ **In Reading window, press** ⊜ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Display Settings* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select an item** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Change the setting** ➡ **Press** ●

Item	Description	Default
Font Size	Select *Tiny*, *Small*, *Standard* or *Standard Plus*	Standard
Text Orientation	Read text vertically or horizontally	Vertical
Ruby	Show ruby annotations	Off
Text Code	Set encoding to *Shift-JIS*, *Latin-1* or *Latin-9*	Shift-JIS

• Above settings are not available for some content.

Mask & Jump

■ Some E-Books may contain hidden text or images (masked info) or links (jump links).
• Select masked info and press ● to see the text or image. Press ● again to hide.
• Select a jump link and press ● to jump to the specified page. Press ◉ **Back** to return.

Folders and Files in E-Book Folders

■ Adding Folders
  In E-Book list, press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *New Folder*
  ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Enter folder name ➡ Press ⦿

■ Editing Folder/File Names
  In E-Book list, select a folder/file ➡ Press ⊚ Options
  ➡ Select *Change Name* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Edit ➡
  Press ⦿

■ Deleting Folders/Files
  In E-Book list, select a folder/file ➡ Press ⊚ Options
  ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⊚ Yes

■ Moving Files
  In E-Book list, select a file ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡
  Select *Move* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a location ➡
  Press ⦿ twice

Tip ▶ The above operations are not available for E-Books in Data Folder (handset/Memory Card). For managing folders/files on handset, see **P.9-14**.

Bookmark

Add bookmarks to return to the pages easily.
Use two bookmarks per E-Book (for up to five E-Books).

1 Press ⊚ Options

2 Select *Bookmark* and press ⦿

3 Select *Bookmark1* or *Bookmark2* and press ⦿
  Bookmark is added.

Auto Bookmark

■ When you close Reading window, Auto Bookmark 1 is added to the last page opened. The next time you close the same E-Book, Auto Bookmark 1 is replaced with Auto Bookmark 2, and added to the new last page.
  • Up to two Auto Bookmarks can be stored per E-Book, and will be deleted older first when another is added.
  • E-Books automatically close and Auto Bookmark 1 is added when incoming calls arrive while reading E-Books.

Opening Bookmarked Page

■ In Reading window, press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Move to Bookmark* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Bookmark1*, *Bookmark2*, *Auto Bookmark1* or *Auto Bookmark2* ➡ Press ⦿

Using E-Book Images

Save as Wallpaper   Save images as Wallpaper

Main Menu ▶ *Tools ➡ E-Book ➡ Open E-Book*

Select an image ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Save as Wallpaper* ➡ Press ⦿ twice
• Some images may not be usable.

Embedded Information	Use information contained in images

Select an image ➡ **Press** ◎ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Jump to Link*, *Toggle Mask* or *Play Animation* ➡ **Press** ●

Jump to Link	Select jump information to move to other pages. Use linked information to send MMS messages or access Mobile Internet sites (E-Book will close). See **P.11-26** "Using Linked Info/Copying Text".
Toggle Mask	Hidden text or images appear
Play Animation	Flip animation plays

Using a Dictionary

Look Up Word	Use downloaded E-Book dictionaries to look up word definitions, etc.

Select a dictionary ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select an entry field** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter a word** ➡ **Press** ●
- Select an entry and press ● to view its definitions.
- Key Assignments: see **P.11-25**

Compass

Find magnetic north and calculate other directions from your current position. Adjust Motion Control sensor (see **P.11-29**) before using Compass for the first time.

1 Select *Compass* and press ●
- Compass indicator points towards magnetic north.

Note ▶
- Built-in sensors detect handset orientation and Earth's magnetic field. Compass calculates the direction of magnetic north based on the readings of these sensors and does not support the Global Positioning System (GPS). Actual direction may differ from that shown on Compass. Use Compass only as a rough guide.
- Actual direction of magnetic north may differ when:
  - Aboard trains or in vehicles
  - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
  - In steel-framed buildings
  - Near or inside lifts
  - Near sources of magnetic fields
- Keep handset Display as level as possible.

Tip ▶ When directions do not appear correctly, adjust Motion Control sensor (see **P.11-29**). In Compass window, press ◎ **Adjust** and follow onscreen instructions.

Motion Control Sensor

Adjust Motion Control sensor before using Compass for the first time or when it does not work correctly.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings (◌)*

1 **Select *Motion Control* and press ◉**
- Follow onscreen instructions.
- If interrupted by incoming call, etc., press ⌨ to redo.

Note ▶ • Avoid adjusting Motion Control sensor when:
- Near sources of magnetic fields, including speakers, refrigerators, doors, handbags, accessories, magnet therapy items, etc.
- Aboard trains or in vehicles
- Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
- In steel-framed buildings
- Motion Control sensor may need to be readjusted for changes in ambient temperature.

Phone Help

Learn when/how to use Keypad functions/shortcuts.

Main Menu ▶ *Tools*

1 **Select *Phone Help* and press ◉**
Phone Help window opens.

```
          15:05
      Phone Help
                          ——— Handset Status and
In standby,                   Key Press Method
press and hold ———
◌                         ——— Target Key

Power  ———                 ——— Function
On/Off

OK      ◌
```
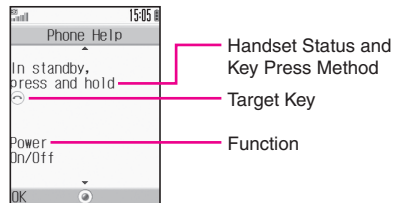
2 **Use ◌ to toggle guides**
3 **Press ✉ 〔 OK 〕 to exit**

Optional Services

Optional Services Overview

- When OUT appears, access services from a touch-tone landline.
- For details, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Call Forwarding	When you know you won't be able to receive calls made to 804SH, automatically divert incoming calls to another phone number (see right)
Voice Mail	Set 804SH to forward all or all unanswered calls to Voice Mail Centre. Access caller messages from 804SH in service area or from a touch-tone phone anywhere (see **P.12-3**).
Call Waiting*	Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls when the line is already engaged. After the tone, place the current call on hold and answer the second, or alternate between calls (see **P.12-5**).
Conference Call*	Open a second line while the first is engaged. Switch back and forth between two lines or talk on both simultaneously. Add other parties to an existing conversation and talk on up to five lines simultaneously (see **P.12-5**).
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions (see **P.12-6**)
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls (see **P.12-9**)

*An additional contract is required.

Call Forwarding

Set forwarding condition and forwarding number beforehand to divert incoming calls to a specified number.

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time. (Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail.)
- Call Forwarding is not available when *All Outgoing Calls* or *All Incoming Calls* in Call Barring is active.

Call Forwarding	Initiate Call Forwarding

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (🔁)* ▶ *Call Settings* ▶ *Voicemail & Diverts* ▶ *Diverts*

Direct Entry
Select *Always* or *No Answer* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select *Enter Phone Number* ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Press ●
  ▊ For *No Answer*, select ring time ▶ Press ●
  • Include dialling code for landline numbers.

Phone Book
Select *Always* or *No Answer* ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ● twice
  ▊ For entries with multiple numbers, select an entry ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a number ▶ Press ● twice
  ▊ For *No Answer*, select ring time ▶ Press ●

Incoming Calls while Call Forwarding is Active

▊ To answer calls, press 🕾 while handset is ringing/vibrating.
  • When *Always* is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for calls.

Note ▶ Phone Numbers Beginning with the Following Numbers Cannot be Saved:
- *1* (Public Service Numbers: 110, 119, 118, etc.)
- *00* (International call numbers: 001, 0041, etc.)
- *0120* (Toll-free numbers)
- *0990* (Fee-based services: Dial Q2, etc.)

Forwarding Video Calls
Video Calls are forwarded only to Video Call-compatible devices that comply with 3G-324M.

Tip ▶ Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Call Forwarding together with Answer Phone (see **P.2-8**).
Example: Ring time for Call Forwarding: 10 seconds
Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds
In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

Cancel All	Cancel Call Forwarding

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (◌)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Voicemail & Diverts*

Select *Cancel All* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ✉ Yes
- Cancel All also cancels Voice Mail.

Status	Check Call Forwarding status

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (◌)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Voicemail & Diverts* ➡ *Status*

Select *Always* or *No Answer* ➡ Press ●
- Call Forwarding status appears.
  ■ Press ● to return.

Voice Mail

Transfer incoming calls to Voice Mail Centre.
- Calls are transferred to Voice Mail Centre using Call Forwarding function. Therefore, Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be used at the same time.
- For details, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
- Voice Mail is not available when *All Outgoing Calls* or *All Incoming Calls* in Call Barring is active.

Voice Mail	Initiate Voice Mail

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (◌)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Voicemail & Diverts* ➡ *Voicemail* ➡ *Activate*

Select *Always* or *No Answer* ➡ Press ●
  ■ For *No Answer*, select ring time ➡ Press ●

Incoming Calls while Voice Mail is Active

■ To answer calls, press ⛨ while handset is ringing/vibrating.
  • When *Always* is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for calls.

Tip ▶ Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Voice Mail together with Answer Phone (see **P.2-8**).

Example: Ring time for Voice Mail: 10 seconds
Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

Cancel All	Cancel Voice Mail

Main Menu ▶ *Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (◌) ▶ Call Settings ▶ Voicemail & Diverts*

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ✉ Yes

• Cancel All also cancels Call Forwarding.

Status	Check Voice Mail status

Main Menu ▶ *Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (◌) ▶ Call Settings ▶ Voicemail & Diverts ▶ Status*

Select *Always* or *No Answer* ▶ Press ●

• Voice Mail status appears.
  ▢ Press ● to return.

Play Voice Mail	Check Voice Mail messages

Press ⌨ for 1+ seconds.

• Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to Voice Mail Centre.
• Alternatively, follow these Steps in Standby.
  ■ Press ● ➡ Select *Phone Book* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Call Voicemail* ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ● ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Call/ Video Call* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Voicemail & Diverts* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Voicemail* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Call Voicemail* ➡ Press ●

Tip ▶ ✆ appears when new messages are recorded, and disappears after they are checked from handset.

VM Centre Number	Change Voice Mail Centre numbers

Default VM Centre Number: 09066517000
Mailbox Numbers: Home Mailbox No. 1416,
Roam Mailbox No. +819066514170

Main Menu ▶ *Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (◌) ▶ Call Settings ▶ Voicemail & Diverts ▶ Voicemail ▶ Settings*

VM Centre Number
Select *VM Centre Number* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Centre Number ➡ Press ●

Mailbox Numbers
Select *Access Voicemail* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Home Mailbox No.* or *Roam Mailbox No.* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Mailbox No. ➡ Press ●

Call Waiting

An additional contract is required.

Call Waiting On/Off	Activate or cancel Call Waiting

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call* (◌) ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Call Waiting*

Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ⬤

Status	Check Call Waiting status

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call* (◌) ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Call Waiting*

Select *Status* ➡ Press ⬤
- Call Waiting status appears.
  ■ Press ⬤ to return.

Incoming Calls	Place Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2

When a tone sounds during a call, press ⓐ.
- Press ⓐ to switch between two lines.

Ending a Call while Someone is on Hold

■ Press ⓐ or close handset. All lines are disconnected.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

■ Short beeps sound. Press ⓞ 𝗥𝗲𝘁𝗿𝗶𝗲𝘃𝗲 to talk with party on hold.

Tip ▶
- Handset does not ring or vibrate for incoming calls while a line is engaged. A tone sounds from Earpiece and *Call Waiting* appears.
- When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voice Mail Centre or the forwarding number. When active service is set to *Always* Call Waiting is disabled.

Conference Call

An additional contract is required.

Dial New Number	Open another line during a call

Enter a phone number during a call ➡ Press ⓐ
- Line 2 is open. Line 1 is placed on hold.
- Press ⓠ to select a number from Phone Book or press ⓐ for 1+ seconds to select from Call Log (All Calls).

Switch Line	Switch between two open lines

During a call, press ⓐ.
- The line switches. The other line is placed on hold.

Closing Handset while Someone is on Hold

■ All lines are disconnected.

Pressing ⓒ while Someone is on Hold

■ The active line ends, then short beeps sound. Press ⓞ Retrieve to talk with party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

■ Short beeps sound. Press ⓞ Retrieve to talk with the party on hold.

| **Conference Call** | Use up to five lines simultaneously |

Press ⊠ Options while switching between two lines ➡ Select *Multi Party* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Conference All* ➡ Press ●

Ending Calls during Conference Call

■ Press ⓒ or close handset. All lines are disconnected.

Some Lines End during Conference Call

■ Other lines remain connected.

Call Barring

Restrict incoming/outgoing Voice Calls, Video Calls or SMS messages.
Following restrictions are available:

Outgoing calls	**All Outgoing Calls**	Restrict all non-emergency calls
	International Calls[1]	Allow only domestic calls
	Only Local & Home[2]	Restrict all international calls except to Japan
Incoming Calls	**All Incoming Calls**	Reject all calls
	Bar if Abroad	Reject calls when outside Japan

[1]Example: During a stay in the United Kingdom, only calls within the country are possible.

[2]Example: During a stay in the United Kingdom, both calls within the country and to Japan are possible.

Reject incoming calls according to phone numbers, or reject incoming calls without Caller ID.

Rejected Numbers	Reject calls from designated numbers
Withheld Call	Reject incoming calls without Caller ID

Note ▶
• Network Password selected at initial subscription (see **P.1-24**) is required to change Call Barring settings.
• If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
• *All Outgoing Calls* and *All Incoming Calls* are disabled when Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is active. (Call Forwarding or Voice Mail takes priority.)

Tip ▶ If call is attempted when Call Barring is active, *Call Barred.* appears. It may take longer to appear in some areas. Check Call Barring settings if the message does not appear.

Restricting Outgoing Calls

Set/Cancel Restriction	Set or cancel restriction of outgoing calls

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (☺)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ *Outgoing Calls*

Each Restriction & Service Type
Select restriction ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a service type ➡ Press ● ➡ Choose *On* (set) or *Off* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ Press ●

Cancelling All Restrictions
Select *Cancel All* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ Press ●

Tip ▶ Emergency calls (**110**, etc.) are possible even when outgoing calls are restricted. For more, see **P.2-4** "Emergency Calls".

Status	Check Call Barring status for outgoing calls

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (☺)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ *Outgoing Calls*

Select restriction ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a service type ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Status* ➡ Press ●
• Call Barring status appears.

  ▇ Press ● to return.

Restricting Incoming Calls

Set/Cancel Restriction	Set or cancel restriction of incoming calls

Main Menu ▷ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (⟳)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ *Incoming Calls*

Each Restriction & Service Type
Select restriction ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a service type ➡ Press ● ➡ Choose *On* (set) or *Off* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ Press ●

Cancelling All Restrictions
Select *Cancel All* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ Press ●

Status	Check Call Barring status for incoming calls

Main Menu ▷ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (⟳)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ *Incoming Calls*

Select restriction ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a service type ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Status* ➡ Press ●

- Call Barring status appears.

■ Press ● to return.

Rejecting Calls

Designate phone numbers to reject, then set Switch On/Off to *On*.

Set Reject Number	Designate phone numbers to reject

Main Menu ▷ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (⟳)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ *Rejected Numbers* ➡ *Set Reject Number*

Adding Numbers
Select ---------- ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter a number ➡ Press ●

■ To select from Phone Book, select ---------- ➡ Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Ph.Book list* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an entry ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a number ➡ Press ●
  ■ Name appears for numbers saved from Phone Book.
■ To select from Call Log, Select ---------- ➡ Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *From Call Log* ➡ Press ● ➡ Use ⊙ to select a type ➡ Select a record ➡ Press ●

Editing Numbers
Select an entry ➡ Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Edit* ➡ Press ● ➡ Edit the number ➡ Press ●

Deleting Numbers
Select an entry ➡ Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊠ Yes

Switch On/Off	Reject calls from designated numbers

Default Off

Main Menu ▷ *Settings* ➡ *Call/Video Call (⟳)* ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ *Rejected Numbers* ➡ *Switch On/Off*

Choose *On* (reject) or *Off* ➡ Press ●

Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Withheld Call	Reject incoming calls without Caller ID

<div align="right">DefaultOff</div>

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (⬡)* ▶ *Call Settings* ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Withheld Call*

Choose *On* (reject) or *Off* ▶ Press ●

Changing Network Password

Change N/W Password	Change Network Password

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (⬡)* ▶ *Call Settings* ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Change N/W Password*

Enter current Network Password ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter new Network Password ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter new Network Password again ▶ Press ●

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when placing calls. Regardless of this setting, sending or blocking Caller ID can be selected for each call. Enter the following numbers/ Symbols before a phone number when placing a call.

Send	⑴⑻⑹ or ※※③⑴#※
Block	⑴⑻④ or #※③⑴#※

Show Your Number	Send or block Caller ID

<div align="right">DefaultOn</div>

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (⬡)* ▶ *Call Settings* ▶ *Show My Number*

Choose *On* (send) or *Off* ▶ Press ●

Status	Check Caller ID status

Main Menu	▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (⬡)* ▶ *Call Settings* ▶ *Show My Number*

Select *Status* ▶ Press ●

• Caller ID status appears.

Vodafone live! Basics

Vodafone live! Services

Use Vodafone live! services to exchange text/multimedia messages with compatible handsets, PCs and other devices; download text, sounds, images and V-applications; browse the Mobile Internet via Web.

• For more information concerning Vodafone live! services, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
• To use Vodafone live! services, first perform Re-Provisioning to update Network information (see **P.1-19**).

■Messaging

Use Short Message Service (SMS) and Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) for messaging (see **P.14-2**). These messaging services are also available outside Japan.

SMS	MMS
Use this basic Vodafone live! messaging service to exchange short text messages of up to 160 alphanumerics with Vodafone handsets. This service is the ideal solution for fast and short text messaging!	Exchange text messages of up to 30,000 alphanumerics with MMS-compatible Vodafone handsets, email-compatible mobiles, PCs and other like devices. Attach images/sounds for multimedia messages.
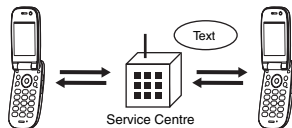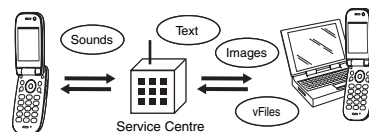
An additional contract is required to use MMS and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.

■Web (Vodafone Web)

Access the Mobile Internet. Browse for image or sound files as well as information (see **P.15-2**).

Vodafone Web Main Menu	(Mobile) Internet
Access Vodafone live!-compatible Mobile Internet sites via Vodafone Web Main Menu; download news/info as well as files for use on handset.	Enter Mobile Internet site URL to view a specific site/page directly; use Access History to access previously viewed sites/pages while online.
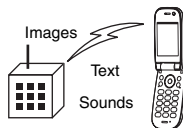
An additional contract is required to use Web service.

■V-applications

Download V-applications, including games and graphics (see **P.16-2**).

Web Downloads	Network V-applications	Screensaver
Search for and download a wide variety of useful and entertaining V-applications via Vodafone Web.	A number of V-applications let you enjoy network gaming or even access real-time news/info.	Use this entertaining function to set a V-application that activates when handset enters Standby.
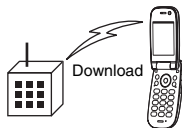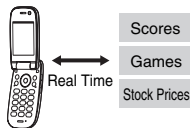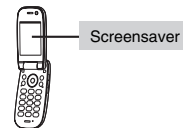
Download

Scores

Games

Real Time

Stock Prices

Screensaver

• Download and use 804SH-compatible V-applications.

• Separate subscriptions are required for V-applications downloaded via Web.

Messaging

Basics

Use SMS and MMS for messaging.

SMS (Short Message Service)	Use this basic Vodafone live! service to exchange short text messages (of up to 160 alphanumerics) with all Vodafone handsets.
MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service)	Exchange long text messages (of up to 30,000 alphanumerics) with all MMS-compatible Vodafone handsets, as well as email-compatible mobiles, computers and other such devices. Attach images/sounds for multimedia messages.

Messaging Folder

Messages are organised in folders by type.

Received	**Received messages**
Unclassed	**Appear when Received Box View**
Folder 1 - 19	**(see P.14-23) is set to *Folder View*.**
Drafts	**Incomplete/unsent messages**
Sent	**Sent messages**
Unsent	**Undelivered/cancelled/failed mail**
Templates	**Messages saved as templates**

When unread, unsent or draft messages are saved, the corresponding Messaging folder names appear in bold with the number of those messages.

Window Description

Messaging Folder Contents

Select a Messaging folder and press ●. To select a different view for Received, see **P.14-23** "Received Box View".

Message Type/Status

• Message Status:

⊠	Unread/Unsent	🖅	Read
⊠	Sent	⊠	Failed
🔲	Unread Delivery Report	🖹	Read Delivery Report

Indicators for message types/settings below appear at the same time.

• Message Type/Settings:

🖻	MMS Mail[1]	🗐	SMS Mail
🗋	Attachments	🔒	Protected
!	Priority (High)	⁻z	Priority (Low)
🔳	MMS Notice[2]	🔃	Delivery Report requested[3]
■	SMS Mail on USIM Card		

[1]Appears when MMS is subscribed.
[2]Appears in Received.
[3]Appears in Sent.

Message Number

Subject or Message Text; Sent or Received Date & Time
• Subject appears for MMS, and message text appears for SMS.

Sender or Recipient
• Number, address or name appears.

Tip ▶ Follow these steps to sort messages.
Press ✉ **Options** ➡ Select *Advanced* ➡ Press ●
Select *Sort* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an option ➡ Press ●
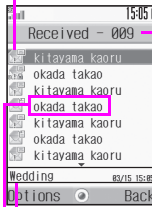
Message Contents

Select a message and press ● to open it.

Received or Sent Date & Time

Sender or Recipient
• Number, address or name appears.

Subject (MMS Mail only)

Message Text
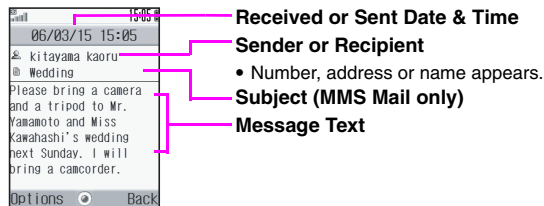
Tip ▶ • To activate Display Backlight, press ⓪ - ⑨.
• Press #⟶ to open previous message (older one), or press *⟵ to open next one (newer one).

Memory Status

■ **Press ● ➡ Select *Messaging* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Memory Status* ➡ Press ●**
  ■ Press ⓪ Back to return.
• Delete messages/files when memory is low. New messages are not received or handset performance may be affected when memory is full.

Customising Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.

Default

□□□□□□□□□□@△.vodafone.ne.jp

Custom   Account Name   Domain Name

Entered Account Name @△.vodafone.ne.jp

△ varies by subscription area.
If you have further questions, please contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).
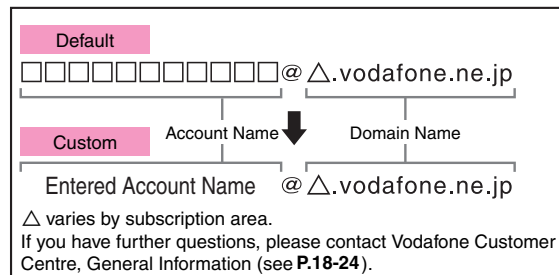
• Handset must connect to the Network to customise handset address.
• Perform Re-Provisioning (see **P.1-19**) before customising handset address.
• Customising handset mail address helps reduce spam.
• Default Account Name is random alphanumerics.

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Vodafone live!*

1 **Select *My Vodafone* and press ●**

2 **Select 各種変更手続き and press ●**

3 **Select オリジナルメール設定・各種メール設定 and press ●**

4 **Select the text entry field below 暗証番号を入力してください。 and press ●**

14-3

5 Enter Centre Access Code and press ⦿

☐ Centre Access Code: see **P.1-24**

6 Select *OK* and press ⦿

7 Select *1. 各種メール設定* and press ⦿

8 Select *1. メールアドレス編集* and press ⦿

9 Select the text entry field below *ご希望のアカウントを入力してください。* and press ⦿

10 Enter an address and press ⦿

11 Select *OK* and press ⦿

Note ▶ This procedure may change without prior notice. For further information, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Sending Text Messages

Basics

Available entry items vary by Message Type.

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachments
SMS	Available	N/A	Available	N/A
MMS	Available	Available	Available	Available

Message Type changes to MMS automatically when subject is entered, a file is attached, etc.

SMS converts to MMS
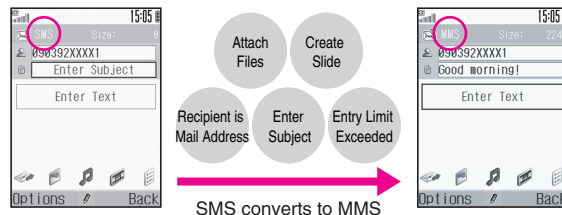
SMS messages are converted to MMS messages when:
- Recipient's Vodafone handset number is over 20 digits
- Font Colour is not *Black*
- Font Size is not *Standard*
- Priority is not *Normal*
- Delivery Time is not *No delay*

Tip ▶ MMS messages may not convert back to SMS messages even after deleting subject or changing settings.
In this case, perform Steps 1 - 2 in "Setting Message Type" on **P.14-12**.
(Handset can be set to send SMS messages only.)

Character Entry Limits

Character entry limits vary by Message Type.

| **SMS** | 160 single-byte alphanumerics |
| **MMS** | Approximately 30,000 single-byte alphanumerics |

- Send up to 300 KB including message text via MMS. Message text character limit differs by attachment size or number of recipients.
- Approximate mail size appears in Mail Composition window (see **P.14-6**).

Mail Composition Overview


```
        SMS            MMS

          Enter Recipient

          ┅┅▶   Enter Subject

          Compose Message

          ┅┅▶   Attach Files
                Image  Sound  Video
                vFile  Etc.

          Send Message
```
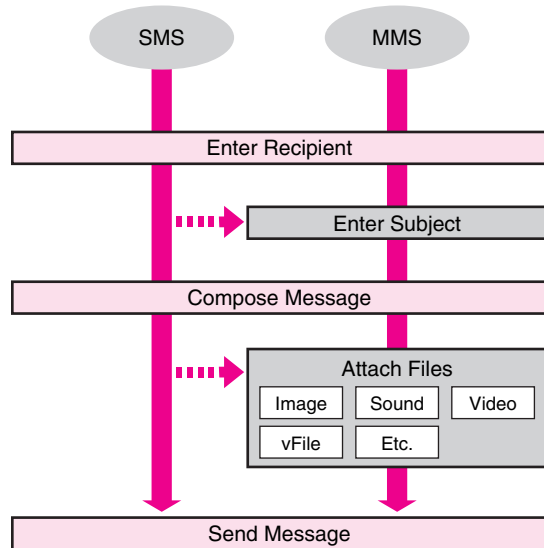
Media Console

Media Console appears in Mail Composition window for mail-related functions.

Send
Add recipients; convert Message Type; view message; save message as draft or template; or use option settings.

Picture
Attach still images.

Sound
Attach melody files.

Video
Attach video files.

Others
Attach files including Phone Book/ schedule entries; view message/ attachments; convert Message Type; save message as draft or template; or use option settings.

Media Console

Media Console Operations

- When `[ ]` appears on Media Console, use ⊙ to select an item ➡ Press ●
- If `[ ]` is not on Media Console, press ⓠ until it appears ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ●

Tip ▶ In this manual, most messaging operations are described for use with Media Console.

Creating & Sending a Message

- Read through the basic information on **P.14-4** - **14-6** beforehand.
- Save Signature to enter into message text (see **P.14-23** "Edit Signature").
- Create Contact Groups beforehand to send the same message to multiple recipients at one time (see **P.4-12**).
- Save frequently used numbers/addresses to Speed Mail List (see **P.14-22**).

1 Press ●, select *Messaging* and press ●
- Alternatively, press ⊠ ▣◻️ in Standby.

2 Select *Create Message* and press ●
Mail Composition window opens.
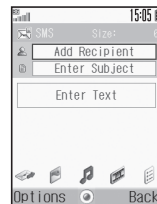
Mail Composition Window

3 Select recipient field and press ●
Select Address window opens.
☐ Entering Recipients (MMS): see **P.14-8**

Select Address Window

14-6
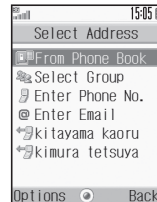
4 *Phone Book*

1 Select *From Phone Book* and press ◉

2 Select a recipient and press ◉

　▪ To search Phone Book, see Steps 2 - 3 on **P.4-8**.
　▪ When multiple items are saved, select one ➡ Press ◉

Contact Groups (see P.4-12)

1 Select *Select Group* and press ◉

2 Select a Group and press ◉

　▪ Press ⊙ **Back** to return. Omit this step when only one member is saved.
　▪ To add recipients (when multiple members are saved), select *Add Contact* ➡ Press ◉ ➡ Repeat Step 4 ➡ Press ⊙ **Back**

Sent Mail Record

1 Select a recipient and press ◉

　• Sent mail records are names, phone numbers or mail addresses with the corresponding indicators (📧 etc.).

Speed Mail List (see P.14-22)

1 Press 🖂 **Options**

2 Select *Speed Mail List* and press ◉

3 Select a recipient and press ◉

Direct Entry

1 Select *Enter Phone No.* or *Enter Email* and press ◉

2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address and press ◉

5 Press 📞 (for SMS) or ◉ (for MMS)

• When sending an SMS message, skip ahead to Step 7.
　▪ To edit recipients, see **P.14-8** "Entering Recipients".

6 Enter subject and press ◉

• Enter up to 40 single-byte alphanumerics (13 single-byte katakana or 13 double-byte characters).

7 Enter a message

　▪ Entering Characters: see **P.3-5**
　▪ To enter Signature, press 🖂 **Options** ➡ Select *Advanced* ➡ Press ◉ ➡ Select *Signature* ➡ Press ◉
　▪ To change font colour, press 🖂 **Options** ➡ Select *Advanced* ➡ Press ◉ ➡ Select *Font Colour* ➡ Press ◉ ➡ Select a colour ➡ Press ◉
　▪ To change font size, press 🖂 **Options** ➡ Select *Advanced* ➡ Press ◉ ➡ Select *Font Size* ➡ Press ◉ ➡ Select a size ➡ Press ◉

8 Press ◉

• When sending an SMS message or to proceed without attaching files, skip ahead to Step 10.
　▪ To edit the message, select message text field and press ◉ ➡ Edit ➡ Press ◉
　▪ To delete the message, select message text field ➡ Press 🖂 **Options** ➡ Select *Remove Text* ➡ Press ◉

9 Attach files or create slides

　▪ Attaching Files: see **P.14-9**
　▪ Creating Slides: see **P.14-10**

10 Select ✎ (Send) on Media Console and press ◉

Send Options window opens.
　▪ To view the message, select *Preview Message* ➡ Press ◉
　▪ To edit recipients, see **P.14-8** "Entering Recipients".
　▪ Setting Message Type: see **P.14-12**
　▪ Additional Settings: see **P.14-11**
　▪ Saving to Drafts: see **P.14-12**
　▪ Creating Templates: see **P.14-13**
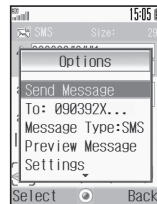
Send Options
Window

11 Select *Send Message* and press ◉

• Messages are sent even if handset is closed.

Sending from Phone Book Entries

■ Open a Phone Book entry and follow these steps:
- Phone Numbers
  Select a number ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Create Message* ➡ Press ● ➡ Perform from Step 5 on P.14-7
- Mail Addresses
  Select a mail address ➡ Press ● ➡ Perform from Step 5 on P.14-7

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

■ Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

When Recipient Handset is Off or Out-of-Range

■ Messages are stored at the Centre, and delivered when recipient handset detects signal.
- To select storage period, see **P.14-11** or **P.14-24** "Expiry Time".
  Messages are deleted if not received by the specified Expiry Time.

Delivery Failure

■ Information window opens (✉ appears) for delivery failure.
  To send unsent messages, press ● ➡ Select *Messaging* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Unsent* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a message ➡ Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Re-send* ➡ Press ●

■ Activate Automatic Resend (see **P.14-23**) to reattempt to send unsent messages automatically up to two times.
- If messages are not sent after two Automatic Resend attempts, follow the above steps to send manually.
- Automatic Resend may send the same message twice.

Entering Recipients

■ Follow these steps to add recipients:
  In Mail Composition window/Send Options window, select recipient field ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Add Contact* ➡ Press ● ➡ Perform Step 4 on P.14-7
  ■ Press ◉ Back to return.
- Enter up to 20 recipients in total.

■ Follow these steps to change recipient status to Cc (carbon copy) or Bcc (blind carbon copy):
  In Mail Composition window/Send Options window, select recipient field ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a recipient ➡ Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Change to TO*, *Change to CC* or *Change to BCC* ➡ Press ●
- Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.

■ To change/edit, open Mail Composition window/Send Options window and follow these steps:
  Select recipient field ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a recipient ➡ Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Edit Recipients* ➡ Press ● ➡ Edit address ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ◉ Back to return.

■ To delete, open Mail Composition window/Send Options window and follow these steps:
  Select recipient field ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a recipient ➡ Press ⊠ Options ➡ Select *Remove* ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ◉ Back to return.

Note ▶ When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana or Pictographs in message text and subject. They may not appear properly on recipient devices.

Tip ▶ Shortcut to Send Options window (see **P.14-7**): Press ⊙ in Mail Composition window.

Attaching Files

Attach images, melody files, vFiles, etc. to MMS messages.
- Attach up to 300 KB including message text.
- Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets (file format, services, etc.) before sending files.
- Follow these steps after Step 9 on **P.14-7**. Mail Composition window returns after a file is attached.

1 *Image Files*

❶ Select 🖻 (Picture) on Media Console and press ⦿

❷ Select *Saved Pictures* and press ⦿

  ■ To capture an image, select *Take Picture* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ to shoot ➡ Press ⦿ (Omit the next step.)
  ■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➡ Press ⦿

❸ Select a file and press ⦿

  ■ *Resize for Sending* appears for JPEG images too large to send. Select a smaller file size to attach the image ➡ Press ⦿

Melody Files

❶ Select 🎵 (Sound) on Media Console and press ⦿

❷ Select *Saved Sounds* and press ⦿

  ■ To record sound, select *Record Voice* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ to start recording ➡ Press ⦿ to stop ➡ Select *Accept* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *To Phone Memory* or *To Memory Card* ➡ Press ⦿ (Omit the next step.)

❸ Select a file and press ⦿

  ■ To play sounds, select a file ➡ Press ⊜ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⦿

Video Files

❶ Select 🎬 (Video) on Media Console and press ⦿

❷ Select *Saved Videos* and press ⦿

  ■ To record video, select *Record Video* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ to start recording ➡ Press ⦿ to stop ➡ Select *Accept* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *To Phone Memory* or *To Memory Card* ➡ Press ⦿ (Omit the next step.)

❸ Select a file and press ⦿

  ■ To play video, select a file ➡ Press ⊜ Options ➡ Select *Play* ➡ Press ⦿

Phone Book Entries

❶ Select 📄 (Others) on Media Console and press ⦿

❷ Select *Attach Ph.Book* and press ⦿

❸ Select an entry and press ⦿

Selected entry is saved to Data Folder (Other Documents) and attached. (🔖 appears next to message size indication.)

Schedule Entries

❶ Select 📄 (Others) on Media Console and press ⦿

❷ Select *Attach Appt.* and press ⦿

❸ Select a date with schedule and press ⦿

❹ Select an entry and press ⦿

Selected entry is saved to Data Folder (Other Documents) and attached. (🔖 appears next to message size indication.)

Attaching Other Files

1 Select ✎ (Others) on Media Console and press ●

2 Select *Attach File* and press ●

3 Select a folder and press ●

4 Select a file and press ●

📎 appears next to message size indication.

Changing/Deleting Attachments (Picture/Sound/Video)

■ To change, follow these steps in Mail Composition window.
Select a file ➡ Press 🖃 **Options** ➡ Select *Replace Picture*, *Replace Sound* or *Replace Video* ➡ Press ●
➡ Select a file ➡ Press ●

■ To delete, follow these steps in Mail Composition window.
Select a file ➡ Press 🖃 **Options** ➡ Select *Remove Picture*, *Remove Sound* or *Remove Video* ➡ Press ●

Opening/Deleting Attachments (Others)

■ To open, follow these steps in Mail Composition window.
Select ✎ (Others) on Media Console ➡ Press ● ➡
Select *View Attachments* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a file ➡ Press ●

■ To delete, follow these steps in Mail Composition window.
Select ✎ (Others) on Media Console ➡ Press ● ➡
Select *View Attachments* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a file ➡ Press 🖃 **Options** ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ●

• To delete all, press 🖃 **Options** in View Attachments window ➡ Select *Delete All* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press 🖃 **Yes**

Creating Slides

Combine message text with image/sound or video to create a slide. Multiple slides in a message appear sequentially in numerical order on MMS-compatible recipient devices.

• Alternatively, attach multiple files to a message. Slides are created automatically.

• Set display time for each slide in Step 5 on **P.14-11**.

• Slides appear as standard message text and attachments on incompatible recipient devices.

• Attach one file (or one image and one sound file) per slide.

• Follow these steps after Step 9 on **P.14-7**. Mail Composition window returns after a slide is attached.

1 Attach a file (see P.14-9)

2 Select ✎ (Others) on Media Console and press ●

3 Select *Add Slide* and press ●

4 Select *Add Slide After* and press ●

Message text and the attached file are set as the first slide. Another message text field appears for the next slide.

• To create a slide and insert another message text field (slide) before it, select *Add Slide Before* and press ●.

5 Enter text/attach a file

- To add slides, repeat Steps 2 - 5.
  - ■ To set display time, select a slide number ➡ Press ◎ **Options**
    ➡ Select **Slide Duration** ➡ Press ● ➡ Select time ➡
    Press ●
    - To enter display time, select **Custom Time** ➡ Press ● twice ➡ Enter time (1 - 60 seconds) ➡ Press ● ➡
      Press ◎ **Options** ➡ Select **OK** ➡ Press ●
  - ■ To delete slides, select a slide number ➡ Press ◎ **Options** ➡
    Select **Remove Slide** ➡ Press ●
    - The last remaining slide returns to standard message text and an attachment.

Additional Settings

SMS/MMS Send Options

- Settings are valid for one message.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on **P.14-7**; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

| **Delivery Report** | Confirm SMS/MMS delivery (see **P.14-14**) |

■ Available only when messaging Vodafone handsets.
Default Off

Select Settings ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select Delivery Report** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Choose On or Off** ➡ **Press** ●
■ Press ◎ **Back** to return to Mail Composition window.

| **Expiry Time** | Set a time limit to store sent messages at the Centre |

Default Maximum

Select Settings ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select Expiry Time** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a limit** ➡ **Press** ●
■ Press ◎ **Back** to return to Mail Composition window.

MMS Send Options

- Settings are valid for one message.
- SMS messages are converted to MMS messages when an MMS Setting is applied. These MMS messages may not convert back to SMS even after restoring the setting to default.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on **P.14-7**; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

| **Priority** | Set priority when sending mail |

Default Normal

Select Settings ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select Priority** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select priority** ➡ **Press** ●
■ Press ◎ **Back** to return to Mail Composition window.
- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

| **Delivery Time** | Set time delay for message delivery |

Default No delay

Select Settings ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select Delivery Time** ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select time** ➡ **Press** ●
■ Press ◎ **Back** to return to Mail Composition window.

Setting Message Type

- SMS converts to MMS when subject is entered/file attached.
- *Automatic* is set when creating a message.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on **P.14-7**; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

1 **Select *Message Type* and press ●**

2 **Select *Automatic*, *SMS* or *MMS* and press ●**

Using Drafts

Saving to Drafts

- When memory is full, delete messages (see **P.14-19**) before creating new ones.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on **P.14-7**.

1 **Select *Save to Drafts* and press ●**

Message is saved to Drafts folder.

Note ▶ Recipient status (To/Cc/Bcc) or the order in which attachments appear may change when saving MMS messages.

Sending from Drafts

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 **Select *Drafts* and press ●**

Saved messages appear.
- ■ To open properties, select a message ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select *Message Details* ➡ Press ●
  - Press ⊙ to scroll down.
  - Press ⊙ **Back** to return.
- ■ To delete draft messages, select one ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊡ **Yes**

2 **Select a message and press ●**

Mail Composition window opens with some fields filled in.

3 **Edit/send the message**

- For details, see procedures for creating a message (see **P.14-6** - **14-7**).
- Sent messages are deleted from Drafts.

Using Templates

Creating Templates

Save created messages as templates.

Follow these steps after Step 10 on **P.14-7**.

1 **Select *Save as Template* and press ●**

2 **Press ●, enter a name and press ●**
- Alternatively, press a key ((0̲̅ⁱ̅) - (9̲̅ʷ̅ˣ̅ʸ̅ᶻ̅), (∗̲̅#̲̅) or (#̲̅#̲̅)) instead of ● to enter the first character.

3 **Press ☺ Options**

4 **Select *Save* and press ●**

Creating a Message from Templates

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 **Select *Templates* and press ●**
- ☐ To open properties, select a template ▶ Press ☺ Options ▶ Select *Message Details* ▶ Press ●
  - ▪ Press ◉ Back to return.

2 **Select a template and press ●**
Mail Composition window opens.

3 **Complete and send message (see P.14-6 - 14-7)**

Incoming Text Messages

Opening New Messages

1 **Delivery Notice appears and Information window opens (✉ appears) for new mail**
- If closed, open 804SH for new mail to see Delivery Notice appear and Information window open.

Information

2 **Select *Message* and press ●**
Received opens.
- Alternatively, press ● while Delivery Notice appears.
- ☐ When folders appear in Received (see **P.14-23** "Received Box View"), select one ▶ Press ●

Received
(List View)

3 **Select a message and press ●**
Message window opens.
- ☐ To retrieve complete MMS messages, see **P.14-14**.
- ☐ Using Messages: see **P.14-15** - **14-16**.
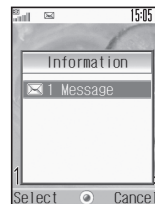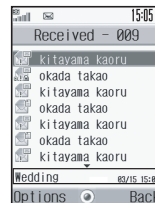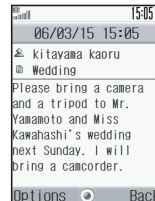
Message Window

Delivery Report

■ When messages are sent with Delivery Report **On** (see **P.14-11**, **P.14-24**), handset receives a Delivery Report from the Centre. Open Delivery Reports in the same manner as standard messages.

New Mail Out of Standby

■ Information window opens when handset returns to Standby.

Tip ▶ When no Delivery Notice or Information window appears open from Received (see **P.14-15** "Checking Messages").

Retrieving Complete MMS Messages

Centre sends initial portion of MMS message when:
■ The message was sent to multiple recipients
■ Files are attached to the message

🖼 (MMS Notice) appears for MMS messages in Received when the remaining portion is at the Centre.

Tip ▶ • To retrieve complete MMS via Mail List, see **P.14-15**.
• To always retrieve complete MMS automatically, set Home Download (Japan) or Roaming Download (Abroad) to **Always Download** (see **P.14-24**).

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 **Select *Received* and press ⦿**

☐ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 *Retrieving a Selected MMS Message*

❶ Select a message with 🖼 and press ⊚ Options

Retrieving Selected MMS Messages

❶ Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-16) and press ⊚ Options

• When more than one message is selected, some may not be retrieved.

3 **Select *Download* and press ⦿**

Download starts.
• After download, Received opens.
☐ To cancel download, press ⦿ Cancel ➡ Press ⊚ Yes

Note ▶ Messages up to 300 KB can be retrieved.

Acquire Mail List

Retrieve a list of messages stored at the Centre (Server Mail).

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 **Select *Server Mail Box* and press ⦿**

☐ To open retrieved Mail Lists, select *Mail List* ➡ Press ⦿
☐ To retrieve all Server Mail, select *Retrieve All Mails* ➡ Press ⦿
☐ To delete all Server Mail, select *Delete All Mails* ➡ Press ⦿
➡ Press ⊚ Yes
■ It may take some time to delete all Server Mail (approximately two to three minutes for 20 messages).

2 Select *Acquire Mail List* and press ●

After retrieval, Mail List appears.
- When Mail List has already been retrieved, it is refreshed.

  ☐ To cancel retrieval, press ◎ **Cancel** ➡ Press ☺ **Yes**
  ☐ Using Mail List: see below

Server Status

☐ To check Server status, follow these steps after Step 1 in "Acquire Mail List" on **P.14-14.**

  Select *Server Mail Volume* ➡ Press ●

- Press ◎ **Back** to return.
- To update Server Mail Volume, press ☺ **Update** ➡ Press ☺ **Yes**

Using Mail List

Download	Retrieve complete MMS messages

Select a message ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Download* ➡ Press ●

- Downloaded messages are deleted from Mail List and saved to Received.

Remote Forward	Forward Server Mail directly to other Vodafone handsets, PCs, etc.

Select a message ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Remote Forward* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *To:* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter recipients (perform Step 4 on P.14-7) ➡ Select *Send Message* ➡ Press ●

Delete	Delete Server Mail

Select a message ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Delete* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ☺ Yes

Using Messages

Reply/forward messages, or use contained information to place calls, send messages or access Mobile Internet sites.
To sort received messages automatically by sender or subject, see **P.14-21** "Sorting by Text String".

Checking Messages

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 Select *Received*, *Drafts*, *Sent*, *Unsent* or *Templates* and press ●

Messages appear.
  ☐ While Delivery Notice appears, press ● to open Received.
  ☐ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ●
  ☐ To open properties, select a message ➡ Press ☺ Options ➡ Select *Message Details* ➡ Press ●
- Press ◌ to scroll.
- Press ◎ **Back** to return.

2 Select a message and press ⦿

- When an image is attached, press ⦿ to open it. Images may not appear if file size is too large.
- Slides play automatically.
- Mail Composition window (see **P.14-6**) opens after opening messages in Drafts or Templates.

  ■ Use ⦿ to scroll.

  ■ To replay slides, press ⧉ **Options** ➡ Select **Slide View** ➡ Press ⦿
  - To mute/unmute sounds, press ⧉ **Options** ➡ Select **Mute** or **Unmute** ➡ Press ⦿
  - To stop, press ⧉ **Options** ➡ Select **Pause** ➡ Press ⦿

  ■ To copy message contents, press ⧉ **Options** ➡ Select **Copy** ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select **From**, **To**, **Subject** or **Body** ➡ Press ⦿
  - For **Body**, use ⦿ to move cursor before the first character of text ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Use ⦿ to select the end of text ➡ Press ⦿
  - To paste text into the same window or another, see **P.3-12** "Copy/Cut & Paste".

Note ▶ • Attached text file contents may not appear correctly.
• Messages in Drafts, Sent, Unsent or Templates may not open if attached files are deleted from Data Folder.

Editing Sent/Unsent Messages

■ Select **Sent** or **Unsent** and press ⦿ in Step 1 on **P.14-15** and follow these steps.
Select a message ➡ Press ⧉ Options ➡ Select Edit & Send or Edit ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Perform from Step 5 on P.14-7

Selecting Multiple Messages

Select multiple messages to protect, delete or change status for all at one time.

Templates must be selected one at a time.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 Select a Messaging folder and press ⦿
■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 Press ⧉ **Options**

3 Select **Advanced** and press ⦿

4 Select **Multiple Select** and press ⦿

5 Select a message and press ⦿
☑ appears on the right of selected message.
■ To unselect, select a message with ☑ ➡ Press ⦿

6 Repeat Step 5 to select all the necessary messages
■ To select all, press ⧉ **Options** ➡ Select **Select All** ➡ Press ⦿
■ To unselect all, press ⧉ **Options** ➡ Select **Unselect All** ➡ Press ⦿

Switch to Read/Unread

Change received message status to read or unread.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 Select **Received** and press ⦿
■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 *Switching Status of a Message*

❶ Select a message and press ⓒ Options

Switching Status of Selected Messages

❶ Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-16) and press ⓒ Options

* Skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select *Advanced* and press ⦿

4 Select *Switch to Unread* or *Switch to Read* and press ⦿

Replying to Messages

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 Select *Received* and press ⦿

　■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 Select a message and press ⦿

3 Press ⓒ Options

4 Select *Reply* or *Reply All* and press ⦿

* Select *Reply All* to send the same message to the sender and up to 19 recipients (To/Cc) of the original message at one time. *Reply All* may not appear for some messages.

5 Select *Reply* or *Reply with Hist.* and press ⦿

Mail Composition window opens.

* Select *Reply with Hist.* to quote the original message text when replying.

6 Complete and send message (perform from Step 5 on P.14-7)

Tip ▶ For *Reply All*, your handset may be included in recipients.

Forwarding Messages

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 Select *Received* or *Sent* and press ⦿

　■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 Select a message and press ⦿

3 Press ⓒ Options

4 Select *Forward* and press ⦿

Mail Composition window opens.

5 Select recipient field and press ⦿

Select Address window opens.

6 Enter recipients and press ⦿

　■ To enter a recipient, perform Step 4 on **P.14-7**.

7 Select ✐ (Send) on Media Console and press ⦿

8 Select *Send Message* and press ⦿

* Files attached to the original message are automatically attached to forwarded messages.

Linked Info

Saving Linked Info to Phone Book

Save a linked phone number/mail address from within message text or sender's/recipient's number/address to Phone Book. In message text, available numbers/addresses turn red when selected.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 **Select *Received* or *Sent* and press ⦿**
  ■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 **Select a message and press ⦿**

3 *Saving Sender's/Recipient's Address*
  ❶ Press ✉ Options
  ❷ Select *Save Address* and press ⦿
  ❸ Select a phone number or mail address and press ⦿

  Saving Linked Info
  ❶ Select a phone number or mail address and press ⦿
  ❷ Select *Save to Phone Book* or *Save* and press ⦿

4 **Select *As New Contact* and press ⦿**
  Number or address is entered in corresponding Phone Book field. Complete other fields and save (see **P.4-4**).
  ■ To save to an existing Phone Book entry, open one ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⦿ Save

Using Linked Info

Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs (***http://***, ***https://*** or ***rtsp://***) within message text to place calls, send messages or open Mobile Internet sites. Available numbers/addresses/URLs turn red when selected.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 **Select *Received* or *Sent* and press ⦿**
  ■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 **Select a message and press ⦿**

3 *Phone Numbers*
  ❶ Select number and press ⦿
  ❷ Select *Call* or *Video Call* and press ⦿

  Mail Addresses
  ❶ Select number or address and press ⦿
  ❷ Select *Create Message* or *Message* and press ⦿
  ■ To complete and send message, perform from Step 5 on **P.14-7**.
  ■ Message is sent and handset returns to Standby.

  URLs
  ❶ Select a URL and press ⦿
  Handset connects to the Network.
  • Video/sound plays for *rtsp://* URLs (see **P.15-10** "Streaming").

Protecting Messages

Protect important messages in Received/Sent or Templates
from unintentional deletion.

- Protected messages cannot be deleted.
- Templates must be selected one at a time.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 **Select *Received*, *Sent* or *Templates* and press ⦿**
■ When folders appear in Received Box, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 *Protecting a Message*
　❶ **Select a message and press ⊜ Options**
　　• To protect messages in Templates, skip ahead to Step 3.
　　• To cancel protection, select a message with 🔒.
　❷ **Select *Advanced* and press ⦿**

　Protecting Selected Messages
　❶ **Select messages (perform from Step 2 in
　　"Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-16)
　　and press ⊜ Options**

3 **Select *Lock* or *Unlock* and press ⦿**
🔒 appears for protected messages.

Deleting Messages

- Protected messages cannot be deleted.
- Templates must be selected one at a time.

Selecting Messages to Delete

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 **Select *Received*, *Drafts*, *Sent*, *Unsent* or
Templates and press ⦿**
■ When folders appear in Received Box, select one ➡ Press ⦿

2 *Deleting a Message*
　❶ **Select a message and press ⊜ Options**
　Deleting Selected Messages
　❶ **Select messages (perform from Step 2 in
　　"Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.14-16)
　　and press ⊜ Options**

3 **Select *Delete* and press ⦿**

4 **Press ⊜ Yes**
　• It may take some time to delete messages (approximately
　　three seconds per message).

Delete All

1 **Select *Received*, *Drafts*, *Sent*, *Unsent* or**
Templates and press ●

■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ●

2 **Press ☺ Options**

• To delete messages in Templates, skip ahead to Step 4.

3 **Select *Advanced* and press ●**

4 **Select *Delete All* and press ●**

5 **Press ☺ Yes**

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save message attachments (images, sounds, vFiles, etc.)
to Data Folder.

1 **Select *Received* or *Sent* and press ●**

■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ●

2 **Select a message and press ●**

3 **Select a file and press ☺ Options**

■ To open properties, select *Details* ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ◉ Back to return.

4 **Select *Save Item* and press ●**

5 **Select storage media and press ●**

• To proceed without changing file name, skip ahead to Step 7.

6 **Enter a file name**

7 **Press ●**

Message window returns.

• When memory is full, a confirmation appears. Delete files
(see **P.9-15**) and try again.

Mail Folders

Received messages are saved to *Unclassed*. Sort
messages to one of 19 folders by sender or subject.

Folder Name

Set Received Box View (see **P.14-23**) to *Folder View*
beforehand.

1 **Select a folder and press ☺ Options**

2 **Select *Rename* and press ●**

■ If selected folder is protected, enter Handset Code ➡ Press ●

3 Enter name and press ●

- Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumerics (10 single-byte katakana or 10 double-byte characters).

Protect/Unprotect Folders

■ To protect folders, perform Step 1 in "Folder Name" on **P.14-20** and follow these steps.
 Select *Lock Folder* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ●
- Handset Code is required to open a protected folder.

■ To cancel protection, perform Step 1 in "Folder Name" on **P.14-20** and follow these steps.
 Select *Unlock Folder* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ●

Moving Messages

Incoming linked messages cannot be moved.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 Select *Received* and press ●

■ When folders appear in Received, select one ➡ Press ●

2 Select a message and press ⊚ Options

3 Select *Advanced* and press ●

4 Select *Move to Folder* and press ●

5 Select a folder and press ●

Sorting by Text String

Sort received messages automatically by phone number, mail address or subject.

- Create up to 20 Distribution Rules per folder.
- Distribution Rules in folders with smaller numbers have higher priority.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *My Folders*

1 Select a folder and press ●

■ If selected folder is protected, enter Handset Code ➡ Press ●

2 Select a number and press ●

■ To delete Distribution Rules, select a number ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Remove* or *Delete All* ➡ Press ●

3 *Sort by Number/Address*

  1 Select *Address* and press ●
  2 Enter a recipient (see Step 4 on P.14-7)

  ■ To change recipients, select one ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Replace* ➡ Press ● ➡ Perform Step 4 on **P.14-7**

Sort by Subject

  1 Select *Subject* and press ●
  2 Enter text and press ●

  - Enter up to 40 single-byte alphanumerics (13 single-byte katakana or 13 double-byte characters).

Messaging

14

14-21

Additional Functions

Speed Mail List

Save up to 10 frequently used numbers/addresses here to use Speed Mail; add recipients from Speed Mail List anytime.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *Speed Mail List*

1 Select a number and press ⦿

■ To change entries, select one ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select
Re-Assign ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Edit number/address ➡
Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⊡ **Yes**

■ To delete entries, select one ➡ Press ⊡ **Options** ➡ Select
Delete or *Clear All* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⊡ **Yes**

2 *Phone Book*

1 Select *From Phone Book* and press ⦿

2 Select an entry and press ⦿

■ To search Phone Book, see Steps 2 - 3 on **P.4-8**.

■ When multiple items are saved, select one ➡
Press ⦿

Direct Entry

1 Select *Enter Phone No.* or *Enter Email* and
press ⦿

2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number
or mail address and press ⦿

Adding to Speed Mail List while Creating Message

■ Add numbers/addresses from Mail Composition window.
Select recipient field ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⊡ Options
➡ Select *Speed Mail List* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select a
number ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Press ⊡ Yes ➡ Perform
Step 2 on the left

Speed Mail

Create mail from Standby using addresses saved to Speed Mail List.

1 In Standby, press the assigned number with Keypad (① - ⑨ and ⓪)

2 Press ⊡ **Mail**

Mail Composition window opens with the recipient entered.

3 Complete and send message (perform from Step 5 on P.14-7)

Using Automatic Resend

Activate Automatic Resend to send unsent messages (failed due to out-of-range, etc.) automatically when signal returns.
- Resend is attempted up to two times for each message.
- Messages are sent in the same order they were created.
- Automatic Resend is *Off* by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Automatic Resend*

1 Choose *On* and press ⦿

☐ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ⦿
■ Remaining failed messages will not be sent automatically.

Note ▶ Automatic Resend is available while roaming, however, message delivery may incur higher charges.

General Settings

Received Box View	Toggle Received display layout between List View and Folder View

Default List View (folders are hidden)

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Received Box View*

Select *List View* or *Folder View* ➡ Press ⦿

☐ When there is a protected folder, enter Handset Code ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Perform the above steps

Edit Signature	Save a name, etc. to insert into message text

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Edit Signature*

Enter/edit signature ➡ Press ⦿

• Insert signature into message text in Step 7 on **P.14-7**.

Auto Delete	Automatically delete oldest received/sent messages to make room for new ones

Default Sent

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Auto Delete*

Select *Received*, *Sent* or *Both* ➡ Press ⦿

☐ To cancel, choose *None* ➡ Press ⦿
• When Received/Sent memory is full, oldest received/sent messages are automatically deleted. Protect important items against deletion (see **P.14-19** "Protecting Messages").

Message List View	Select style in which messages appear in lists

Default One-line View

Main Menu	▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Message List View*

Select *One-line View* or *Two-line View* ➡ Press ⦿

Delivery Report	Confirm SMS/MMS delivery (see **P.14-14**)

■ Available only when messaging Vodafone handsets.
Default Off

Main Menu	▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Delivery Report*

Choose *On* (request) or *Off* ➡ Press ⦿

• If *On*, reports arrive for all messages to Vodafone handsets. To confirm the delivery of single messages, see **P.14-11**.

Expiry Time	Set a time limit to store sent messages at the Centre

Default Maximum

Main Menu	▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Expiry Time*

Select a limit ➡ Press ⦿

Roaming Download	Set complete MMS retrieval to auto or manual

■ Adjust this setting when using 804SH outside Japan.
Default Always Defer

Main Menu	▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Roaming Download*

Select *Always Download* or *Always Defer* ➡ Press ⦿

Home Download	Set complete MMS retrieval to auto or manual

■ Adjust this setting when using 804SH in Japan.
Default Always Defer

Main Menu	▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *General Settings* ➡ *Home Download*

Select *Always Download* or *Always Defer* ➡ Press ⦿

SMS Settings

Message Centre	Set SMS Centre Number

Default +819066519300

Main Menu	▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ *Message Centre*

Enter SMS Centre Number ➡ Press ⦿

Note ▶ Do not change Centre Number unless instructed to do so.

Text Optimisation	Set 804SH to render non-roman characters in their nearest roman character equivalents

Default On

Main Menu	▶ *Messaging* ➡ *Mail Settings* ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ *Text Optimisation*

Choose *On* (replace) or *Off* ➡ Press ⦿

Connection Type	Set GSM network connection type for SMS delivery

Default CSD Preferred

Main Menu	▶ Messaging ➡ Mail Settings ➡ SMS Settings ➡ Connection Type

Select *GPRS Preferred* or *CSD Preferred* ➡ Press ●

Note ▶ Do not change Connection Type unless instructed to do so.

MMS Settings

For MMS Account settings, see **P.10-34**.

Delivery Rep. Allow	Select whether to send delivery status to senders requesting MMS Delivery Report

Default On

Main Menu	▶ Messaging ➡ Mail Settings ➡ MMS Settings ➡ Delivery Rep. Allow

Choose *On* (send delivery status) or *Off* ➡ Press ●
• If sender requests Delivery Report for received SMS, Report is sent regardless of this setting (see **P.14-11**, **P.14-24**).

Slide Duration	Set the initial display time for slides

Default 3 seconds

Main Menu	▶ Messaging ➡ Mail Settings ➡ MMS Settings ➡ Slide Duration

Enter time ➡ Press ●

Max Message Size	Limit outgoing message size to 30, 100 or 300 KB

Default 300 KB

Main Menu	▶ Messaging ➡ Mail Settings ➡ MMS Settings ➡ Max Message Size

Select a size ➡ Press ●

Creation Mode	Restrict attachment types and message formats to increase compatibility with mobiles outside Japan

Default Free

Main Menu	▶ Messaging ➡ Mail Settings ➡ MMS Settings ➡ Creation Mode

Select *Free* or *Restricted* ➡ Press ●

Web

Getting Started

Access the Mobile Internet via Vodafone Web (see **P.13-2**).

- Browse for image or sound files as well as information.
- Perform Re-Provisioning (see **P.1-19**) before using Web.
- Web appears as **Vodafone live!** on handset.

Tip ▶ Address questions about Vodafone Web to Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

Web Content

Sample Web information page:

- Scroll Bar (see **P.15-5**)
- Cursor (see **P.15-5**)
- Content
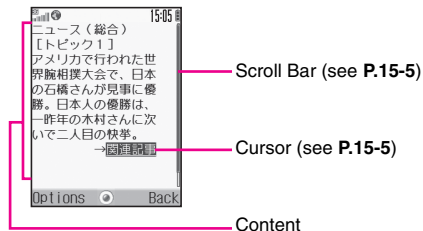
Note ▶ Requested pages may not appear due to transmission conditions/Server status.

Cache Memory

■ Cache Memory temporarily holds copies of retrieved pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.
  - Previously viewed pages may load from Cache Memory.
  - Cached items with expiry dates are deleted upon expiry.

■SSL

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an encryption protocol for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers. Electronic certificates are saved on handset (see **P.15-14** "Root Certificates").

Disclaimer

■ When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. Vodafone, VeriSign Japan, Baltimore Technologies Japan and Entrust Japan cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Using Web

Opening Vodafone Web Menu

Select topics from Vodafone Web Menu to access sites.

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!*

1 Select *Vodafone live!* and press ⦿

Vodafone Web Main Menu appears.
- Shortcut: In Standby, press ⦿ ▮⦿▮
- Vodafone Web Main Menu is subject to change.

2 Highlight a menu item

3 Press ⦿

Handset connects to the Network.
- Handset remains connected to the Network even if it is closed.
  ▮ To disconnect, press ⏻.

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to open additional links
▮ Basic Operations: see **P.15-5**

5 Press ⦿ then ⦿ ▮Yes▮ to exit

Page Jump

▮ Press ⦿ ▮Back▮ to see the previous page.
  ▪ To return to the initial page, press ⦿ ▮Options▮ ➡ Select *Forward* ➡ Press ⦿

Opening Secure Pages

▮ *Entering secure area. OK?* appears for secure pages. Press ⦿ ▮OK▮ to open the secure page.
- ۞ appears for secure connections.
- To disable confirmations, see **P.15-14** "Secure Prompt".

When Authentication is Required

▮ Some pages require user authentication for access. If requested, enter user ID or password and press ⦿.

Tip ▶ Previously retrieved pages may open directly from Cache Memory without connecting to the Network.

Using Access History

Open previously viewed pages. Access History stores up to 10 domains and up to 30 pages for each; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Access History*

1 Select a domain folder and press ●

2 Select an item and press ●

    ■ To open properties, select an item ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Details* ➡ Press ●
       ■ Press ⊙ Back to return.
    ■ To send URLs via SMS/MMS, select an item ➡ Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Send Page* ➡ Press ● ➡ Create and send message (Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**.)

3 Press ⊙ then ⊙ Yes to exit

Deleting Access History

■ Open Access History and follow these steps.
Select a domain folder or item within (Skip this step for *Delete All*.) ➡ **Press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Delete* or *Delete All* ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊙ Yes**

• *Delete All* clears the entire domain folder when performed for an item inside.

Entering URLs Directly

Enter URLs directly to access Mobile Internet sites.
To use Access History, see left.

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!*

1 Select *Enter URL* and press ●

    ■ Press ⊙ to enter *www.*.
    ■ To enter address prefix (*http://*, *https://* or *file://*), press ⊙ Options ➡ Select *Advanced* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ●

2 Press ●

3 Enter URL and press ●

    ■ To enter *.co.jp*, *.ne.jp*, etc., press ⊛ ➡ Select an item ➡ Press ●

4 Press ⊙ Options

5 Select *OK* and press ●
Information appears.

6 Press ⊙ then ⊙ Yes to exit

Note ▶ Some sites may not be accessible via 804SH; site images and layouts, etc. may differ from those viewed via PC.

Basic Operations

Using Cursor

Use cursor to select underlined menu items.
Use $\textcircled{2}$ to scroll through items.
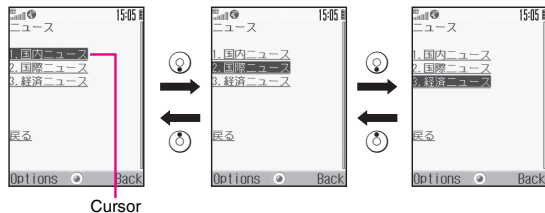
Cursor

Use $\textcircled{\cdot}$ to move left and right when multiple items are listed in one row. Cursor does not appear for unselectable items.

Scrolling Pages

Scroll bar appears on the right when
page content continues beyond view.
Slider indicates current page position.
Use $\textcircled{2}$ to scroll; slider moves
accordingly.

Scroll Bar
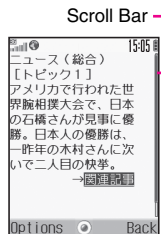
Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.

Text Entry Field
- Highlight ☐ and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$. Text entry window opens. Enter text and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

Check-box
- Highlight ☐ (check-box) and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$. The box changes to ☑, indicating that the item is selected.
- In addition to ☐, ○ may also appear as selection indicators.

Menu List
- Highlight the field and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ to select an item.

Command Button
- Use to send, reset, etc.
- Highlight ☐ and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ to execute the indicated command.
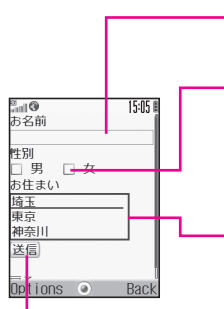
■ Entered text (except Security Code) is saved to Input Memory. Use saved text in other applications.

■ Up to 20 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

Using Input Memory

■ **In a text entry window, press** ⓔ **Options** ➜ **Select** *Advanced* ➜ **Press** ⬤ ➜ **Select** *Input Memory* ➜ **Press** ⬤ ➜ **Select text** ➜ **Press** ⬤

Advanced Features

Bookmarks & Saved Page

Bookmark sites or save page content to Saved Page.

Item	Description
Bookmarks	Save links to Mobile Internet sites. 804SH connects to the Network to access the site. • Create folders to organise Bookmarks. • *Sharp Space Town* Mobile Internet site (Japanese Only) is bookmarked by default. Visit *Sharp Space Town* to download Wallpaper, games, Dictionary files, etc.
Saved Page	Save page content; 804SH opens saved pages without connecting to the Network. • Save frequently used items to Saved Page.

Saving Bookmarks & Pages

1 Press ⊚ Options

- *Mark Page* or *Save This Page* appears only for savable pages.

2 **Bookmarks**

■Select *Mark Page* and press ●
■Check name, etc. and press ●

■ When *Enter title.* appears, press ● ➡ Enter title ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *OK* ➡ Press ●
■ If the same title exists, press ● ➡ Change title ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *OK* ➡ Press ●

Saved Page

■Select *Save This Page* and press ●
■Enter title and press ●

■ If the same title exists, press ● ➡ Change title ➡ Press ●

Saving URLs to Bookmarks

■ Enter URLs directly to save site references to Bookmarks.
Press ● ➡ **Select *Vodafone live!*** ➡ **Press ●** ➡
Select *Bookmarks* ➡ **Press ●** ➡ **Press ⊚ Options**
➡ **Select *New*** ➡ **Press ●** ➡ **Select *Bookmark*** ➡
Press ● ➡ **Press ●** ➡ **Enter URL** ➡ **Press ●** ➡
Press ⊚ Options ➡ **Select *OK*** ➡ **Press ●** ➡ **Enter title** ➡ **Press ●** ➡ **Press ●**

Opening Bookmarks & Saved Page

1 **Bookmarks**

■Select *Bookmarks* and press ●

■ To send URLs via MMS/SMS, select a title ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Send Page* ➡ Press ● ➡ Create and send message (Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**.)
■ To open properties, select a title ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Details* ➡ Press ●
■ Press ⊙ Back to return.

```
                        15:05
        Bookmarks
 Sharp Space Town
 ニュース
 Movie情報
 ゲーム
 連載小説
Options        Back
```
Bookmarks

Saved Page

■Select *Saved Page* and press ●

■ To update items, press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Update* ➡ Press ●
  ■ 804SH connects to the Network to update content.
■ To show or hide date, select a title ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Show Date* or *Hide Date* ➡ Press ●
■ To open properties, select a title ➡ Press ⊚ Options ➡ Select *Details* ➡ Press ●
  ■ Press ⊙ Back to return.
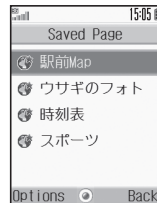
```
                        15:05
        Saved Page
 駅前Map
 ウサギのフォト
 時刻表
 スポーツ
Options        Back
```
Saved Page

2 Select a title and press ●

Opening Bookmarks & Saved Page Online

■ Bookmarks

Press ⓢ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Bookmarks* ➡ **Press** ●
➡ **Select a title** ➡ **Press** ●

■ Saved Page

Press ⓢ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Advanced* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select *Saved Page* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a title** ➡
Press ●

Editing Bookmarks & Saved Page

Open Bookmarks or Saved Page first (see **P.15-7**).

| **Bookmarks Folder** | Sort Bookmarks into folders |

Creating a Folder

Press ⓢ **Options** ➡ **Select** *New* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select**
Folder ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter a name** ➡ **Press** ●

Moving to Folder

Select a title ➡ **Press** ⓢ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Move* ➡
Press ● ➡ **Select a folder** ➡ **Press** ●

• *Move* can only be selected when there is a folder.
  ■ To move back from folders, select *Bookmarks* as the
     destination ➡ **Press** ●

| **Rename** | Edit title or Bookmarks folder name |

Select a title or folder ➡ **Press** ⓢ **Options** ➡ **Select**
Rename ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter title** ➡ **Press** ●

| **Delete** | Delete entries |

Select a title or folder ➡ **Press** ⓢ **Options** ➡ **Select**
Delete or *Delete All* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Press** ⓢ **Yes**

• Before deleting a folder, delete all the titles in the folder.

| **Edit URL (Bookmarks)** | Edit URLs in Bookmarks |

Select a title ➡ **Press** ⓢ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Edit URL* ➡
Press ● ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter URL** ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Press ⓢ **Options** ➡ **Select** *OK* ➡ **Press** ●

Saving to Data Folder

Save images, sounds, etc. to Data Folder.

Save Items

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Open a page*

1 **Press** ⓢ **Options**

2 **Select** *Save Items* **and press** ●

■ To open files, select a file ➡ Press ⓢ **Options** ➡ Select *View*
   ➡ Press ●
   ■ Press ⓢ to enlarge.
   ■ Press ⓞ **Back** to return.

■ To open properties, select a file ➡ Press ⓢ **Options** ➡ Select
   Details ➡ Press ●
   ■ Press ⓞ **Back** to return.

■ To send files via MMS, select one ➡ Press ⓢ **Options** ➡
   Select *Send* ➡ Press ● ➡ Create and send message
   (Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-6**.)
   ■ Files can be sent only when *Send* appears.

3 Select a file and press ●

Data Folder opens.
■ Use ⊙ to switch between handset and Memory Card.
■ To save to a sub folder, select folder ➡ Press ●

4 Select *Save here* and press ●

• To accept the default title (file name), skip ahead to Step 6.

5 Enter title (file name)

6 Press ●

File is saved to Data Folder.
• When memory is full, notification appears. Delete files and try again (see **P.9-15**).

Linked Files

In some pages, files may be downloaded from links.

`Main Menu` ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Open a page*

1 Select a link and press ●

File details appear.

2 Press ●

Download starts. Upon completion a confirmation appears and file is saved to Data Folder.
■ To cancel, press ⊙ `Cancel`.

3 Press ●

The content plays or appears.
■ Press ⊙ `Back` to return.

Using Linked Info

Use linked numbers (*TEL:*), addresses or URLs (*http://*, *https://* or *rtsp://*) to place calls, send MMS or open Mobile Internet sites.

• Available only when number, address or URL is underlined.
• Words may serve as a linked number, address or URL.

`Main Menu` ▶ *Vodafone live!*

1 Open a page containing a linked phone number, mail address or URL

2 *Phone Numbers*

❶ Highlight number and press ●

❷ Select *Call* or *Video Call* and press ●

804SH dials the number.

Mail Addresses

❶ Highlight number or address and press ●

❷ Select *Create Message* and press ●

◼ To complete and send message, perform from Step 5 on **P.14-7**.

URLs

❶ Highlight a URL and press ●

Handset connects to the Network.

• Video/sound plays for *rtsp://* URLs (see right).

Save to Phone Book

◼ To save as new entry, open page and follow these steps.
Select a phone number or mail address ➡ Press ●
➡ Select *Save to Phone Book* ➡ Press ● ➡
Select *As New Contact* ➡ Press ● ➡ See P.4-4

◼ To save as new item, open page and follow these steps.
Select a phone number or mail address ➡ Press ●
➡ Select *Save to Phone Book* ➡ Press ● ➡
Select an entry ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ◎ Save

Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it downloads.

• Only compatible files support streaming.

• Downloaded content cannot be saved.

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Open a page*

1 Select a file and press ●

Streaming begins. (Playing Music/Video: see **P.7-8**, **P.7-12**.)

◼ To pause a stream, press ●.
  ■ Press ● to resume.
  ■ Streaming requires a continuous Network connection.

◼ To stream media via a URL, while streaming, press ● ➡ Press ◎ Options ➡ Select *Enter URL* ➡ Press ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ Press ●

◼ To save the source URL to Favourites, while streaming, press ● ➡ Press ◎ Options ➡ Select *Favourites* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Add Current* ➡ Press ●

Backlight

◼ Adjust streaming Backlight while streaming.
Press ◎ Options ➡ Select *Settings* ➡ Press ● ➡
Select *Backlight* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Always On*,
***Always Off* or *Normal Settings* ➡ Press ●**

• Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight setting (see **P.10-7**).

Incoming Calls/Mail while Streaming

■ Streaming pauses for incoming calls.
  Answer or reject calls while handset is ringing/vibrating.
  Press ⊙ Options ➡ **Select *Answer* or *Reject Call*** ➡
  Press ⦿
  - After the call, source Mobile Internet site returns. When streaming was initiated from Media Player (see right), handset returns to Standby.
  - To resume streaming from pause point press ⊙ Yes.
    ■ To play back from the beginning, press ⦾ No.
■ ✉ appears for incoming mail.

Changing Display Size

■ Press ⓪ to toggle Display Size for current stream.
  ■ Display Size toggles as follows: ***Enlarge*** → ***Full Screen***
    (no indicators) → ***Full Screen*** (with indicators) →
    Original Size
  ■ Display Size cannot be changed while stream is paused.
  - Display Size may not change depending on file/stream.
■ Change Display Size setting for streaming while streaming.
  Press ⊙ Options ➡ **Select *Settings*** ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡
  Select *Display Size* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Select *Original Size*,**
  Enlarge **or** ***Full Screen*** ➡ **Press ⦿**

Note ▶ • Closing 804SH stops an active stream.
         • Paused streams stop after five minutes of inactivity.

Tip ▶ Up to 10 previously accessed URLs are saved.
         When full, oldest URLs are deleted to make room for new ones.

Streaming from Media Player   Access the Mobile Internet from Media Player

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ➡ *Streaming*

Resuming the File Played Last

Select *Last Played* ➡ **Press ⦿**
- File plays from where it stopped.
- ***Last Played*** can only be selected when Streaming was paused (see left).

Entering URLs

Select *Enter URL* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Enter URL** ➡
Press ⦿
- Enter up to 1,024 single-byte alphanumerics.

Using Favourites

Select *Favourites* ➡ **Press ⦿** ➡ **Select an entry** ➡
Press ⦿

Using Access Log

Select *Access Log* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select an entry ➡ Press ⦿

　　■ To open properties, select *Access Log* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select an entry ➡ Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Detail* ➡ Press ⦿
　　　■ Press ⓞ Ⓑⓐⓒⓚ to return.
　　■ To edit and access URLs, select *Access Log* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select an entry ➡ Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Edit URL* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Edit URL ➡ Press ⦿

Accessing Files for Streaming

■ Open video-related links from Vodafone Web Menu.
　Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Media Player* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Streaming* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Streaming Link* ➡ Press ⦿

Tip ▶ • For playback operations, see **P.15-10** - **15-11**.
　　　• Select *Settings* in Streaming menu and press ⦿ to set Backlight and Display Size (see **P.15-10**, **P.15-11**).

Additional Functions

Sub Menu Settings

Access Option menu settings from an open page.

| **Home** | Open Vodafone Web Main Menu |

Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Home* ➡ Press ⦿

| **Enter URL** | Enter URL directly to access Mobile Internet sites |

Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Enter URL* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Perform Steps 2 - 5 in "Entering URLs Directly" on P.15-4

| **Access History** | Previously visited Mobile Internet site links |

Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Access History* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Perform Steps 1 - 2 in "Using Access History" on P.15-4

| **Reload Page** | Update page content |

Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Reload Page* ➡ Press ⦿

| **Send Page** | Send URLs via SMS/MMS |

Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Advanced* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Send Page* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Create and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-6.)

| **Properties** | Open information details |

Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Advanced* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Details* ➡ Press ⦿
　■ Press ⓞ Ⓑⓐⓒⓚ to return.

| **Browser Data** | Clear Cache, Cookies or Access History |

Press ⓔ Ⓞⓟⓣⓘⓞⓝⓢ ➡ Select *Advanced* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Browser Data* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Clear Cache*, *Clear Cookies* or *Clear History* ➡ Press ⦿

• Deleted Items:

Cache	Temporarily saved information in Cache Memory
Cookies	Information sent by a server for user identification
History	URLs of previously accessed Mobile Internet sites

Search This Page	Search current page or jump to page top or bottom

New Search

Press ⊙ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Advanced* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select *Search This Page* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select**
Search ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Enter text to**
search ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Press** ⊙ **Go**

• First search result is highlighted; press ● to jump to next.
☐ To cancel, press ⊙ **Options** ➡ Select *Cancel* ➡ Press ●

Jump to Page Top or Bottom

Press ⊙ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Advanced* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select *Search This Page* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *Jump*
to Top or *Jump to Bottom* ➡ **Press** ●

Copy Text	Copy text

Press ⊙ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Copy Text* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.3-12

Certificates	View electronic certificates for a secure page

Press ⊙ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Browser Settings* ➡
Press ● ➡ **Select** *Security* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select**
Certificates ➡ **Press** ●

☐ Press ⊙ **Back** to return.
☐ To open certificate, press ⊙ **Details**

Restart Browser	Refresh Vodafone Web without exiting completely

Press ⊙ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Advanced* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select *Restart Browser* ➡ **Press** ●

• Vodafone Web Main Menu appears.

About	Open browser details

Press ⊙ **Options** ➡ **Select** *Advanced* ➡ **Press** ● ➡
Select *About* ➡ **Press** ●

☐ Press ⊙ **Back** to return.

Uploading Files	Upload images or other Data Folder files to the Centre via Mobile Internet sites

☐ Open compatible site first.

Select *Browse...* ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select a file (see**
P.9-4) ➡ **Press** ● ➡ **Select** *Send* ➡ **Press** ●

• Example above is for reference only. Follow site instructions for specific procedure.
• Files are uploadable only via pages supporting uploads.

Basic Settings

Font Size	Change character size

DefaultMedium

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Browser Setting* ➡ *Font Size*

Select a size ➡ **Press** ●

Scroll Step	Select from three scroll units

DefaultSingle Line

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Browser Setting* ➡ *Scroll Step*

Select a unit ➡ **Press** ●

Send Referrer	Select whether or not to allow access to referrer information

DefaultAllow

Main Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➡ *Browser Setting* ➡ *Send Referrer*

Select *Allow* or *Don't allow* ➡ **Press** ●

Web

15

Cookies	Enable or disable cookies (see **P.15-12**)

Default Enabled

Select *Enabled* or *Disabled* ➡ Press ●

Downloads	Select whether to download images and sounds on Mobile Internet sites automatically or to open text information only

Default Show images/Play sounds/Download objects

Images

Select *Images* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Show images* or *Don't show images* ➡ Press ●

Sounds

Select *Sounds* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Play sounds* or *Don't play sounds* ➡ Press ●
Select *Objects* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Download objects* or *Don't download objects* ➡ Press ●
• Objects are files other than images and sounds.

Manufacture Number	Select whether or not to send handset manufacture number automatically for authentication

Default Off

Choose *On* (send) or *Off* ➡ Press ●

Location	Choose whether or not to send location info automatically

Default Confirm with the user

Press ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ◙ ▐ OK ▌ ➡ Select *Confirm with the user*, *Send* or *Not Send* ➡ Press ●
• When *Datum On/Off* in LBS Settings (see **P.10-36**) is set to *Off*, location info is not sent.

Download to	Select whether to save downloaded files on handset (Handset Memory) or Memory Card (Memory Card Pref.)

Default Memory Card Pref.

Select *Handset Memory* or *Memory Card Pref.* ➡ Press ●
• Even when *Memory Card Pref.* is set, downloaded files are saved to handset if Memory Card is full or not inserted.
• Some files may not be saved to Memory Card.

Security

Secure Prompt	Show or hide confirmations before entering and exiting secure pages (see **P.15-2**)

Default Show

Select *Show* or *Don't show* ➡ Press ●

Root Certificates	Open electronic certificates issued by Certificate Authorities saved on handset

Select *Root Certificates* ➡ Press ●
▌ To open certificates, select one ➡ Press ◙ ▐Details▌
▌ Press ◙ ▐Back▌ to return.

Authentication	Previously entered user ID or password is entered automatically for authentication

Default On

Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ●

V-applications

Getting Started

Download V-applications, including games.

- Enjoy Network games or real time information (Network V-applications: see right).
- Download and use 804SH compatible V-applications.
- Separate subscriptions are required for V-applications downloaded via Web.

Tip ▶ Address questions about V-applications to Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

V-appli Library

Open V-appli Library to access V-applications saved on handset or Memory Card.

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli*

1 Select *V-appli* and press ⦿

■ Use � to switch between handset and Memory Card.

Opening Java™ License Information

■ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *V-appli* ➡ Press ⦿ ➡ Select *Information* ➡ Press ⦿

IC-appli

■ IC-appli, a V-application required to use Vodafone live! FeliCa, is preloaded on handset (see **P.17-2**). IC-appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other V-applications.

Network V-applications

Network V-applications require a network connection. Before using a Network V-application, a message appears indicating that a network connection is required. To skip this confirmation, see **P.16-7**.

V-applications on Memory Card

Synchronise Memory Cards used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices to update V-appli Library. Perform Re-Provisioning beforehand (see **P.1-19**).

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *Settings* ➡ *Synchronisation*

1 Press ✉ ▮ Yes ▮

Note ▶ V-applications saved to Memory Cards from your 804SH are exclusively for use on 804SH with your USIM Card or a newly purchased Vodafone handset.

Tip ▶ It may take some time to update V-appli Library depending on the number of files saved, etc.

Video Output

Connect 804SH to a TV, VCR, etc. with Video Cable to view V-applications on the target device.

- Use Video Output with compatible V-applications; confirm compatibility in **Video out** in properties (see **P.16-5**).
- Before performing the steps below, connect Video Cable to 804SH and device, and activate Video Output (see **P.10-9**).

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *V-appli*

1 Select a V-application and press ●

V-application appears on the device.
■ Press ⬚ to toggle display between the device and handset.
  ■ To toggle device Display Size, see **P.10-10**.

Note ▶ • For eye safety, avoid playing V-applications on an external device for long periods.
• V-applications started from Screensaver do not support Video Output.

Downloading V-applications

- Perform Re-Provisioning beforehand (see **P.1-19**).
- Some V-applications can be downloaded to Memory Cards.
- Make sure signal is strong.

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *V-appli* ➡ *More V-Appli*

1 Open a Mobile Internet site offering V-applications

2 Select a V-application and press ●

Properties appear.
■ When a V-application is paused (🐾 appears in grey), press ⬚ **Yes**.

3 Press ●

Download starts.
• Download may take time.
■ Press ⊙ **Back** to cancel.

4 Downloaded V-application is automatically saved and a confirmation appears

• When you download a new version of V-application set as Screensaver (see **P.16-6**), Screensaver may be cancelled.

5 Press ⬚ Yes

Web closes and V-appli Library opens.
■ To return to the site, press ⊙ **No**.
■ Starting V-applications: see **P.16-4**

Tip ▶ Some V-applications require Centre Access Code or Permission setting. Follow onscreen prompts to use the V-application (may only be available in Japanese).

Properties

Check V-application properties before completing download.
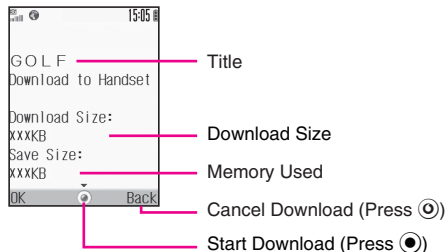
```
┌─────────────────────────┐
│ ▒▒⊙         15:05 ▒     │
│                         │
│ GOLF ─────────────────── Title
│ Download to Handset     │
│                         │
│ Download Size:          │
│ XXXKB ────────────────── Download Size
│ Save Size:              │
│ XXXKB ────────────────── Memory Used
│                ▾        │
│ OK         ○      Back  │
└─────────────────────────┘
                ○      Back ── Cancel Download (Press ◎)
                └─────────── Start Download (Press ●)
```

Memory Status

■ Press ● ➡ Select *Data Folder* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select
Memory Status ➡ Press ● ➡ Select *Phone Memory* or
Memory Card ➡ Press ●

Using V-applications

Starting V-applications

1 **Select *V-appli* and press ●**

V-appli Library opens (see **P.16-2**).

☐ When a V-application is paused (♣ appears in grey), press ●.

2 **Select a V-application and press ●**

V-application starts (♣ appears).

- For operations, refer to the source Mobile Internet site, etc.
- If the V-application cannot be used, V-appli Library returns.

Tip ▶ V-applications automatically pause for incoming
transmissions. To set 804SH to ignore them, see **P.16-8**
"Calls & Alarms".

Starting Network V-applications

■ If a network connection confirmation appears after Step 2:
Choose *Yes* or *No* ➡ Press ● ➡ V-application starts

- To skip confirmation, see **P.16-7**.

■ Some V-applications require permission settings (see **P.16-7**).

Exit, Pause & Resume

Exiting or Pausing V-applications

1 **Press ⊙ while using a V-application**

2 *Exiting V-application*

❶ Select *End* and press ⊙

🦣 disappears and V-appli Library returns.

Pausing V-application

❶ Select *Suspend* and press ⊙

Handset returns to Standby with 🦣 (grey).
• V-application resumes from pause point.

Resuming V-applications

1 **While a V-application is paused, press ⊙ in Standby**

• 🦣 (grey) appears while a V-application is paused.

2 **Select *Resume* and press ⊙**

■ To end the V-application, select *End* ➡ Press ⊙
■ To open Main Menu and the V-application paused, select *Cancel* ➡ Press ⊙

Managing V-applications

Opening V-application Properties

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *V-appli*

1 **Select a V-application and press ⊟ Options**

2 **Select *Information* and press ⊙**

Title	Title of the V-application
Vendor	Name of the distributor (or supplier/manufacturer)
Version	Version of the V-application
Description	Description of the V-application
Save Size	Downloaded file size
Recorded	Record game scores, etc. up to this size
Screensaver	Compatibility with Screensaver
Profile	Versions: VSCL (Overseas)/JSCL (Domestic)
Link	Link to source Mobile Internet site
Video out	Compatibility with Video Output
Certification	Trusted/Untrusted
Cert. Subject	Authority of Certification (Common Name, Country and Organization)
Motion Sensor	Compatibility with Motion Control
Push	Compatibility with automatic network connection
IC Support	Compatibility with IC-appli

■ Press ⊙ to scroll down.
■ Press ⊙ Back to return.

Moving V-applications to Memory Card

`Main Menu` ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *V-appli*

1 **Select a V-application and press ⊚ [Options]**

2 **Select *Move to Card* and press ●**

> ⬛ When an older version of the V-application is saved, press ⊚ [Yes] or ⊙ [No].
> ■ Press ⊚ [Yes] to overwrite.

Note ▶ • V-applications cannot be moved to Memory Card when the same V-application is already saved or when Memory Card memory is low. Cancel Screensaver to move a V-application set as Screensaver.
> • Some V-applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.

Deleting V-applications

`Main Menu` ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *V-appli*

1 **Select a V-application and press ⊚ [Options]**

2 **Select *Delete* and press ●**

If the V-application is set as Screensaver, V-appli Library returns. To proceed, cancel Screensaver and retry.

3 **Press ⊚ [Yes]**

• Preloaded V-applications can be deleted.
• Handset Code may be required.

Screensaver

Activating/Cancelling Screensaver

Set a V-application to activate when handset enters Standby. Screensaver is *Off* by default.

`Main Menu` ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *Settings* ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ *Switch On/ Off*

1 **Choose *On* and press ●**

> ⬛ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ●

Setting Screensaver

• Only one compatible V-application can be set for Screensaver.
• Screensaver cannot be set when another V-application is paused (🍴 appears in grey).
• IC-appli and V-applications on Memory Card cannot be set.

`Main Menu` ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *V-appli*

1 **Select a V-application and press ⊚ [Options]**

2 **Select *Set as Screensaver* and press ●**

• *Set as Screensaver* appears for compatible V-applications.

Note ▶ • Screensaver does not start when LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones is connected. Connecting Headphones (with Memory Card inserted) cancels an active Screensaver.
• Screensaver may not start when an external device (hands free kit, etc.) is connected to handset.
• Screensaver which responds to incoming transmissions may cancel out selected Mode Settings profile.

Setting Permissions

Customise the method of confirmation, etc. for each V-application operation below.

• Settings:

Phone Call	Place Voice Calls
Network Access	Connect to the Network
Messaging	Send/receive messages
Autorun	Execute Autorun files
Local Connection	Connect to other devices
Read User Data	Access Phone Book, Calendar, etc.
Write User Data	Edit Phone Book, Calendar, etc.
Use Multimedia	Use Media Player
Location Access	Send location info

• These settings are also available for V-applications on Memory Card.
• Permission settings may not be available for some V-applications.

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *V-appli*

1 Select a V-application and press ⊚ **Options**

2 Select *Permission* and press ●

3 Select an item and press ●

4 Select an option and press ●

• Some options may not appear.

Session	Confirmation appears every time the V-application starts
Ask Once	Confirmation appears before the specific operation
Blanket	No confirmation
No	Reject the operation

Additional Functions

V-application Operational Settings

The following settings apply to IC-appli as well.

Volume	Adjust the volume of V-application sounds

DefaultLevel 3

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *Settings* ➡ *Application Volume*

Use ◌ to adjust the volume ➡ Press ●
• In Manner mode, volume set in Manner settings applies.

Backlight	Select a Backlight status for V-applications

DefaultNormal Settings

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *Settings* ➡ *Backlight* ➡ *Switch On/Off*

Select from *Always On* to *Normal Settings* ➡ Press ●

Always On	Backlight remains on while V-applications runs
Always Off	Backlight remains off while V-applications runs
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (see **P.10-7**)

Blink	When activated, Backlight flashes while compatible V-applications play

DefaultOn

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *Settings* ➡ *Backlight* ➡ *Blink*

Choose *On* (Backlight flashes) or *Off* ➡ Press ●

Vibration	When activated, handset vibrates while compatible V-applications play

DefaultOn

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *Settings* ➡ *Vibration*

Choose *On* (handset vibrates) or *Off* ➡ Press ●
• In Manner mode, vibration set in Manner settings applies.

Calls & Alarms	Select a handset response to incoming calls, etc. while a V-application is active

DefaultCall/Message/Alarm Priority

Main Menu ▶ *V-appli* ➡ *Settings* ➡ *Calls & Alarms*

Select from *Voice Call* to *Alarm* ➡ Press ● ➡ Select a handset response ➡ Press ●

Call/Message/ Alarm Priority	V-application pauses for incoming call/mail
Call/Message/ Alarm Notice	A message appears for incoming calls, mail, etc. For example, (☎*090392XXXX1*) appears. Press ☌ to answer the call.

• Regardless of the setting, a message appears for V-applications started from Screensaver.

Surround	Set surround effect for V-applications

<div align="right">Default On</div>

Choose *On* or *Off* ➡ Press ●

Reset

Set to Default	Reset V-application settings

Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ✉ Yes

• The settings affected by Set to Default:

Application Volume		Level 3
Backlight	**Switch On/Off**	Normal Settings
	Blink	On
Vibration		On
Calls & Alarms	**Voice Call**	Call Priority
	Video Call	Call Priority
	Incoming Message	Message Priority
	Alarm	Alarm Priority
Screensaver	**Switch On/Off**	Off
	Activation Time	03 seconds
	Suspend Time	Off
Surround		On

Memory All Clear	Restore V-appli Library to default setting

Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ● ➡ Press ✉ Yes

Note ▶ • Memory All Clear deletes downloaded V-applications and IC-appli. However, Memory All Clear is disabled if IC Card data remains. Delete IC Card data beforehand (see **P.17-2**).
• Preloaded V-applications are restored.

Vodafone live! FeliCa

Basics

Vodafone live! FeliCa encompasses a range of IC Card-based services available via FeliCa-compatible Vodafone handsets.

804SH supports Vodafone live! FeliCa. To use services such as e-money, e-ticketing and reward point systems, simply hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at a shop or restaurant, etc.

FeliCa

■ A contactless IC card technology enabling wireless data transmissions with compatible reader/writer terminals

IC Card

■ The FeliCa chip embedded in FeliCa-compatible handsets
■ Holds information required to use Vodafone live! FeliCa

IC-appli

■ V-Applications required to use Vodafone live! FeliCa
  • Edy e-money IC-appli is preloaded on 804SH.
    ■ Edy is a prepaid e-money service run by bitWallet Inc.

Note ▶ IC Card data content varies by service and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by IC-appli; contact the service provider for details.

Service Usage Outline

Download IC-appli

Download IC-appli via Mobile Internet site.
• IC-appli is saved to IC-appli folder.

Complete Registration/Set Up

Activate IC-appli, complete registration/customise settings.
• Charge accounts, check balance or payment records, etc.

Use Service

To use Vodafone live! FeliCa at shops, restaurants, and locations, centre ⌒ logo side over reader/writer.
• Use e-money/e-tickets to shop/travel and earn reward points.

Note ▶ • IC-appli registration and usage vary; contact the service provider for details.
• Vodafone is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.
• Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

Starting IC-appli

To use Vodafone live! FeliCa, activate a service IC-appli and complete service registration, setup, charge, balance check, etc.

Main Menu ▶ *IC-appli*

1 **Select *IC-appli* and press ●**
 ■ To download an IC-appli, select *More IC-appli* ➡ Press ●

2 **Select an application and press ●**
 IC-appli starts.
 ■ To end the IC-appli, press ⌂.

Note ▶ IC-appli cannot be started during calls or when another V-application is active.

Tip ▶ IC-appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other V-applications (see **P.16-5** - **16-9**).
 However, IC-appli cannot be set as Screensaver.

Using Vodafone live! FeliCa

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction.

Example: making an electronic payment:
• Complete registration, setup and charge in advance.
• Complete transactions without activating an IC-appli.

1 **Centre ⌔ logo side over reader/writer**

Place Vodafone logo over reader/writer
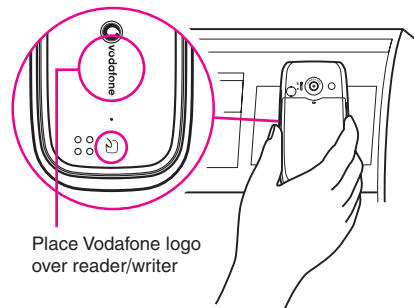
• Reader/writer will scan FeliCa IC Card even during calls or Vodafone live! transmissions.
• Confirm scan results on reader/writer display.
• If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
• When placed over sensor, 804SH may display a message, vibrate or activate a V-application for some services. To disable response, see **P.17-7** "Interface Settings".

Vodafone live! FeliCa Settings

IC Card Status

Main Menu ▶ *IC-appli* ➡ *IC Card Settings*

1 Select *IC Card Status* and press ⬤
   ■ If IC Card lock is set, press ✉ **Yes** ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Press ⬤
   ■ Press ⬤ to exit.

IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorised use of Vodafone live! FeliCa on 804SH.

• Activate IC Card Lock remotely (see **P.17-5** "Remote Lock").
• IC Card Lock is *Off* by default.

Main Menu ▶ *IC-appli* ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ *IC Card Lock*

1 Enter Handset Code and press ⬤

2 Choose *On* and press ⬤
   ■ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ⬤ (Omit the next step.)

3 Press ✉ **Yes**

Remote Lock

Send mail with specified subject (Mail Remote Lock) or call from a specified phone (Call Remote Lock).

Preparation on Handset

■Mail Remote Lock Password/Address

Save a password for Mail Remote Lock, and set mail address to send IC Card Lock notice to.

Main Menu ▶ *IC-appli* ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ *Remote Lock*

1 **Enter Handset Code and press ●**

2 **Select *Mail Remote Lock* and press ●**

3 **Select *Remote Lock PW* and press ●**

4 **Enter a password and press ●**
  • Enter between 5 and 16 alphanumerics.

5 **Select *Email Lock Notice* and press ●**

6 **Select *From Phone Book*, *Enter Phone Number* or *Enter Email Address* and press ●**

7 **Select/enter mail address or Vodafone handset number and press ●**

8 **To save settings without enabling Mail Remote Lock, press ⊙ Save**
  • To enable Mail Remote Lock, after Step 7, perform from Step 3 in "Remote Lock Setup" on **P.17-6** and choose *On* in Step 4.

■Call Remote Lock Number/Count for Lock

Save up to two phone numbers from which to call handset, and set Missed Call count required to activate IC Card Lock (default count is 3 times).
Enable Remote Lock activation via public phones.

Main Menu ▶ *IC-appli* ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ *Remote Lock*

1 **Enter Handset Code and press ●**

2 **Select *Call Remote Lock* and press ●**

3 **Select *Phone No. to Lck 1* and press ●**
  ■ To enable activation via public phone, select *Set Public Phone* ➡ Press ● ➡ Choose *On* ➡ Press ●
  ■ To disable activation via public phone, choose *Off*.

4 **Select *From Phone Book* or *Enter Phone Number* and press ●**

5 **Select/enter a phone number and press ●**
  ■ To save second phone number, select *Phone No. to Lck 2* ➡ Press ● ➡ Repeat Steps 4 - 5

6 **Select *Count for Lock* and press ●**
  • *3 times* is set by default.

7 **Enter Missed Call count (3 - 10 consecutive times) required to activate IC Card Lock and press ●**

8 **To save settings without enabling Call Remote Lock, press ⊙ Save**
  • To enable Call Remote Lock, after Step 7, perform from Step 3 in "Remote Lock Setup" on **P.17-6** and choose *On* in Step 4.

Remote Lock Setup

Activate or cancel Mail Remote Lock/Call Remote Lock.
Both Remote Locks are *Off* by default.

Main Menu ▶ *IC-appli* ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ *Remote Lock*

1 **Enter Handset Code and press ●**

2 **Select *Mail Remote Lock* or *Call Remote Lock* and press ●**

3 **Select *Switch On/Off* and press ●**

4 **Choose *On* and press ●**

   ■ To cancel, choose *Off* ➡ Press ●
      ■ Saved mail address and phone numbers remain.
        Reactivate Remote Lock to use the same setting.

5 **Press ⊙** `Save`

Activating Remote Lock

▌Via Mail

1 **Use MMS/e-mail to send password to handset**
   • Enter password as subject; leave other fields blank.
   • To confirm IC Card Lock status, send a message via phone or
     PC with specified mail address (see **P.17-5**).

After Handset Receives Message

■ IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent from handset to
  specified mail address.

Note ▶ If 804SH cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

▌Via Phone

1 **Using one of the specified phones, call handset**

2 **End the call**

   The call is recorded as a Missed Call on your handset.
   • Within three minutes, repeat Steps 1 - 2 until the specified
     number of Missed Calls are recorded.
   • Payphones can be used for this function if Set Public Phone is
     activated beforehand.
   • Send Caller ID when placing calls from specified phone.
     (Caller ID is not required for payphones.)

After Specified Number of Missed Calls

■ IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock
  activation.

Note ▶ Missed call count is reset by incoming calls from numbers
          not saved for this function. If series is interrupted, start
          over from the beginning.

Interface Settings

Set 804SH response to reader/writer commands: Choose
On for **V-appli** to activate V-application, **Browser** to access
the Mobile Internet, **Messaging** to activate mail, **Vibration**
to vibrate handset, and **Pop-up Message** to open pop-up
message. Interface Settings is **On** for all items by default.

1 Enter Handset Code and press ⊙

2 Select from **V-appli** to **Pop-up Message** and
press ⊙

3 Choose **On** or **Off** and press ⊙

Resetting Defaults

Cancel custom settings and return Vodafone live! FeliCa
settings to their defaults.

1 Enter Handset Code and press ⊙

2 Press ⊚ Yes

Tip ▶ • Set to Default does not affect downloaded IC-appli.
     • Memory All Clear (see **P.16-9**)/Reset All (see **P.10-19**)
     return IC-appli settings to defaults and delete
     downloaded IC-appli. Memory All Clear and Reset All
     are disabled if IC Card data remains.

Appendix

Function Menu

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to
V-appli	V-appli	**P.16-2**
	Settings	**P.16-6**
	Information	**P.16-2**
Vodafone live!	Vodafone live!	**P.15-3**
	Enter URL	**P.15-4**
	Bookmarks	**P.15-6**
	Saved Page	**P.15-6**
	Access History	**P.15-4**
	Browser Setting	**P.15-13**
Media Player	Music	**P.7-11**
	Videos	**P.7-13**
	Streaming	**P.15-10**
Messaging	Create Message	**P.14-6**
	Received	**P.14-15**
	Drafts	**P.14-12**
	Sent	**P.14-15**
	Unsent	**P.14-15**
	Templates	**P.14-13**
	Server Mail Box	**P.14-14**
	Mail Settings	**P.14-22**
	Memory Status	**P.14-3**
Camera	-	**P.6-2**

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to
Data Folder	Pictures	**P.9-2**
	DCIM	**P.9-2**
	Sounds&Ringtones	**P.9-2**
	Custom Screens	**P.10-4**
	V-appli	**P.16-2**
	IC-appli	**P.17-3**
	Videos	**P.9-2**
	Text Templates	**P.9-14**
	Other Documents	**P.9-2**
	Memory Status	**P.9-2**
Tools	Calendar	**P.11-2**
	Alarms	**P.11-10**
	Auto Power On	**P.11-13**
	Calculator	**P.11-14**
	Answer Phone	**P.2-8**
	Voice Recorder	**P.11-15**
	Barcode	**P.11-17**
	E-Book	**P.11-25**
	Stopwatch	**P.11-23**
	Tasks	**P.11-6**
	World Clock	**P.11-13**
	Countdown Timer	**P.11-23**
	Expenses Memo	**P.11-24**
	Compass	**P.11-28**
	Phone Help	**P.11-29**

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
804SH won't turn on	• Did you press ⊙ for 2+ seconds? • Battery may need to be charged. • Battery may not be properly installed.	• Press ⊙ for 2+ seconds. • Charge battery or install a charged battery. • Install battery properly.
804SH won't respond	• Is *Switch On/Off* in PIN Entry *On*?	• If *On*, PIN1 is required. Enter PIN1 according to onscreen instructions. For more, see **P.10-16**.
***Insert USIM Card* appears in Standby and 804SH is unresponsive**	• USIM Card may not be properly inserted. • The correct USIM Card may not be inserted. • There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	• Make sure USIM Card is properly inserted. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged. • Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid. • Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.
Keypad won't respond	• Keypad Lock may be active. (📵 appears) • Function Lock may be active. (🔒 appears)	• Cancel Keypad Lock (see **P.1-20**). • Cancel Function Lock (see **P.10-17**).
Cannot place call from Phone Book	• The number may be saved as Secret Mode entry. • Phone Book Lock may be active.	• Activate Secret Mode (see **P.10-18**). • Cancel Phone Book Lock (see **P.10-17**).
OUT appears in Standby and call won't connect	• 804SH may be outside the service area or otherwise beyond signal transmission range.	• Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone	• Did you include the dialling code or the first *0*? • 804SH may be out-of-range. (OUT appears) • 804SH Offline mode may be active. (⬚ appears)	• Dial the number including the dialling code or *0*. • Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. • Cancel Offline Mode (see **P.2-19**).
Call is choppy or cut off	• Network signal may be weak. • Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	• Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. • Charge battery or install a charged battery.
Line is noisy during calls	• Network signal may be weak or unstable.	-
Battery won't charge	• AC Charger may not be properly connected to 804SH or Desktop Holder. • AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to outlet. • Battery may not be properly installed. • 804SH may not be properly inserted into Desktop Holder. • There may be debris on terminals: (804SH, battery or Desktop Holder); connector (AC Charger); Connection Terminal (Desktop Holder); External Device Connector. • Battery may not charge outside 5℃ to 35℃. • Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective.	• Make sure connector is securely inserted and try again. • Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and try again. • Open 804SH, install battery properly and try again. • Remove 804SH and re-insert correctly. • Clean all terminals with a cotton swab and try again. • Charge within an ambient temperature of 5℃ - 35℃. • Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges quickly	• Remaining charge shortens charging time.	-
804SH/Charger/Desktop Holder feels warm	• During charging, AC Charger or Desktop Holder normally becomes warm; 804SH may feel warm to the touch during extended periods of use.	• Unless 804SH/accessories become very hot to the touch, this should be considered normal; regardless, avoid prolonged skin contact which could cause burn injuries (see **P.xxii**).
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	• Environmental factors (temperature, charging/signal conditions), usage or settings can affect Battery Time.	• For more on Battery Time, usage factors and ways to extend Battery Time, see **P.1-12** - **1-13**.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Display flickers	• Display may flicker under fluorescent lights.	-
Chaku-Uta, music or video sound skips	• When Surround is on, opening 804SH while Chaku-Uta, music or video play causes a momentary delay in playback by design; this is not a malfunction.	-
Display went dark	• Leaving 804SH open with no key presses for a preset period cancels Backlight (Time Out) then panel (Display Saving); this is not a malfunction.	• Press any key to reactivate Display backlight.

Tip ▶ For repairs and after-sales services, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see **P.18-24**).

Warning Signs

■🅞🅤🅣 **appears**

Handset is out-of-range.

Move for a better signal.

■*Recharge battery.* **appears and short beeps sound**

Battery is low (see **P.1-14**).

Charge or replace battery immediately.

■🔒 **appears**

Keypad Lock is active (see **P.1-20**).

Cancel to use Keypad. Press keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-5**) to answer calls.

■🔒 **appears**

Function Lock is active (see **P.10-17**).

Cancel to place calls, etc.

Press keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-5**) to answer calls.

V-application Display Messages

Display	Cause	Solution
Application suspended. End application? Application is suspended.	• A V-application is paused.	• Close application and try again.
○○ Download to Handset Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB Download? Battery low. Donwload may not be completed.	• Download may fail due to low battery.	• Charge battery then try again.
○○ Not Enough Memory in Handset. Download to Memory Card Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB Download?	• Memory is full.	• Press ● to download or ◎ Back to cancel.

Display	Cause	Solution
Exceeds limit. Cannot save.	• 100 V-applications are already saved. (The message disappears automatically.)	• Delete applications (see **P.16-6**) and try again.
New Version Found Continue Download?	• An older version of the same V-application is saved.	• Press ⊚ **Yes** to download or ⊙ **No** to cancel.

Tip ▶ V-applications cannot be downloaded when the following messages appear:
  • *Improper data cannot download application.*   • *Application size too large. Cannot download.*

Messaging Mishaps

■When MMS is not delivered as sent

Causes include the following. For details, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**).

• **Recipient is not subscribed to MMS, Super Mail or Long Mail.**

• **Recipient handset is not MMS-compatible.**
  ■ The maximum size of messages/attachments recipient handsets can receive varies by make and model.

• **Recipient handset is not JPEG-compatible.**
  ■ Some Long Mail-compatible handsets may only be able to process PNG images; convert JPEG files to PNG, then attach and send (see **P.9-11**).

■When handset memory is insufficient

New messages cannot be delivered (📧, 📩 or 📨 appears in red). Undeliverable mail is saved at the Centre.

• Delete messages to free memory for new ones (see **P.14-19**). When memory is available, new messages are delivered automatically.

• Delete unprotected messages automatically to receive new ones (see **P.14-23**).

• Even if memory is not full, handset cannot receive new messages larger than remaining memory.

Character Code List

Table 1 (First Three Digits 010–046)

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010			、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？
011	！	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿	ヽ
012	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー	―
013	‐	／	＼	～	∥	｜	…	‥	'	'
014	"	"	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝
015	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】
016	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦
017	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥
018	＄	￠	￡	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§	☆
019	★	○	●	◎	◇					
020		◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	￢	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√
027	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬					
028			Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡	¶
029	◯									
030										
031							０	１	２	３
032	４	５	６	７	８	９				
033				Ａ	Ｂ	Ｃ	Ｄ	Ｅ	Ｆ	Ｇ
034	Ｈ	Ｉ	Ｊ	Ｋ	Ｌ	Ｍ	Ｎ	Ｏ	Ｐ	Ｑ
035	Ｒ	Ｓ	Ｔ	Ｕ	Ｖ	Ｗ	Ｘ	Ｙ	Ｚ	
036						ａ	ｂ	ｃ	ｄ	ｅ
037	ｆ	ｇ	ｈ	ｉ	ｊ	ｋ	ｌ	ｍ	ｎ	ｏ
038	ｐ	ｑ	ｒ	ｓ	ｔ	ｕ	ｖ	ｗ	ｘ	ｙ
039	ｚ									
040		ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ	え	ぉ
041	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け	げ	こ
042	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ	ぜ	そ
043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	づ	て	で
044	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は	ば	ぱ
045	ひ	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ	ぺ	ほ
046	ぼ	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ	や	ゅ

Table 2 (First Three Digits 047–160)

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
047	ゆ	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	ゎ	わ
048	ゐ	ゑ	を	ん						
050		ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ	エ	ォ
051	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	コ
052	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ
053	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ	テ	デ
054	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ	バ	パ
055	ヒ	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ	ペ	ホ
056	ボ	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ	ヤ	ュ
057	ユ	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ヮ	ワ
058	ヰ	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ			
060		Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Ζ	Η	Θ	Ι
061	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ
062	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω					
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070		А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
071	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
072	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						
074										а
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
080		─	│	┌	┐	┘	└	├	┬	┤
081	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┳
082	┫	┻	╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿	┝	┰
083	┥	┸	╂							
160		〔あ〕亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢

Table 3 (First Three Digits 161–187)

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏	〔い〕以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
170		院	陰	隠	韻	吋	〔う〕右	宇	烏	羽
171	迂	雨	卯	鵜	窺	丑	碓	臼	渦	嘘
172	唄	欝	蔚	鰻	姥	厩	浦	瓜	閏	噂
173	云	運	雲	〔え〕荏	餌	叡	営	嬰	影	映
174	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	瑛	盈	穎	頴	英
175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越
176	閲	榎	厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨
177	掩	援	沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿	縁
178	艶	苑	薗	遠	鉛	鴛	塩	〔お〕於	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
180		押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬
181	鴎	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	臆	桶
182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穏	音	〔か〕下	化
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	茄	荷	華	菓
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕

Table 4 (First Three Digits 188–222)

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改					
190		魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥
191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖
192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鎧	骸	浬
193	馨	蛙	垣	柿	蛎	鈎	劃	嚇	各	廓
194	拡	撹	格	核	殻	獲	確	穫	覚	角
195	赫	較	郭	閣	隔	革	学	岳	楽	額
196	顎	掛	笠	樫	橿	梶	鰍	潟	割	喝
197	恰	括	活	渇	滑	葛	褐	轄	且	鰹
198	叶	椛	樺	鞄	株	兜	竃	蒲	釜	鎌
199	噛	鴨	栢	茅	萱					
200		粥	刈	苅	瓦	乾	侃	冠	寒	刊
201	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完	官	寛	干
202	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢	柑	桓	棺
203	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	潅	環	甘	監	看
204	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝	艦	莞	観
205	諌	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関	陥	韓	館
206	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌	眼	岩	翫
207	贋	雁	頑	顔	願	〔き〕企	伎	危	喜	器
208	基	奇	嬉	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机
209	旗	既	期	棋	棄					
210		機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季	稀
211	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢	騎
212	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬	欺
213	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊	鞠
214	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍	却
215	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及	吸
216	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸	球
217	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去	居
218	巨	拒	拠	挙	渠	虚	許	距	鋸	漁
219	禦	魚	亨	享	京					
220		供	侠	僑	兇	競	共	凶	協	匡
221	卿	叫	喬	境	峡	強	彊	怯	恐	恭
222	挟	教	橋	況	狂	狭	矯	胸	脅	興

Note: Reading-group dividers (〔あ〕〔い〕〔う〕〔え〕〔お〕〔か〕〔き〕) mark the first kanji of each gojūon reading section as printed in the table.

Character code table (First Three Digits × Last Digit). Section reading markers (あ行/か行… hiragana) appear as divider rows.

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
223	蕃	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	尭	暁
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	僅	勤	均
225	巾	錦	斤	欣	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌	衿	襟	謹	近	金	吟	銀	
く										
226										九
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈	掘	窟	沓	靴	轡
230	窪	熊	隈	粂						
231	栗	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群	軍
232	郡									
け										
232		卦	袈	裟	係	傾	刑	兄	啓	圭
233	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	慧	憩	掲
234	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経	継
235	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽	頚
236	鶏	芸	迎	鯨	劇	戟	撃	激	隙	桁
237	傑	欠	決	潔	穴	結	血	訣	月	件
238	倹	倦	健	兼	券	剣	喧	圏	堅	嫌
239	建	憲	懸	拳	捲					
240		検	権	牽	犬	献	研	硯	絹	県
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	顕	験
242	鹸	元	原	厳	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現
243	絃	舷	言	諺	限					
こ										
243						乎	個	古	呼	固
244	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
245	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
246	顧	鼓	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後
247	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	誤	護	醐
248	乞	鯉	交	佼	侯	候	倖	光	公	功
249	効	勾	厚	口	向					
250	后	喉	坑	垢	好	孔	孝	宏	工	巧
251		巷	幸	広	庚	康	弘	恒	慌	抗
252	拘	控	攻	昂	晃	更	杭	校	梗	構
253	江	洪	浩	港	溝	甲	皇	硬	稿	糠
254	紅	紘	絞	綱	耕	考	肯	肱	腔	膏
255	航	荒	行	衡	講	貢	購	郊	酵	鉱
256	砿	鋼	閤	降	項	香	高	鴻	剛	劫

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
257	号	合	壕	拷	濠	豪	轟	麹	克	刻
258	告	国	穀	酷	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	甑
259	忽	惚	骨	狛	込					
260		此	頃	今	困	坤	墾	婚	恨	懇
261	昏	昆	根	梱	混	痕	紺	艮	魂	
さ										
261										些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	査	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐
271	鯖	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
272	惨	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕
273	讃	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残			
し										
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸
277	紙	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌
278	諮	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
279	字	寺	慈	持	時					
280		次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔	磁	示	而
281	耳	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式	識	鴫	竺
282	軸	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失	嫉	室	悉
283	湿	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠	偲	柴	芝
284	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨	赦	斜	煮
285	社	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇	邪	借	勺
286	尺	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱
287	惹	主	取	守	手	朱	殊	狩	珠	種
288	腫	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪	寿	授	樹
289	綬	需	囚	収	周					
290		宗	就	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋
291	終	繍	習	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴
292	輯	週	酋	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
293	従	戎	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔
294	夙	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術
295	述	俊	峻	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循
296	旬	楯	殉	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵
297	醇	順	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒
298	署	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐
299	恕	鋤	除	傷	償					
300		勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨
301	妾	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠
302	彰	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶
303	松	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦
304	照	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧
305	紹	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証	詔
306	詳	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘	上
307	丈	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢	常
308	情	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸	譲
309	醸	錠	嘱	埴	飾					
310	拭	植	殖	燭	織	職	色	触	食	蝕
311	辱	尻	伸	信	侵	唇	娠	寝	審	心
312	慎	振	新	晋	森	榛	浸	深	申	
313	疹	真	神	秦	紳	臣	芯	薪	親	診
314	身	辛	進	針	震	人	仁	刃	塵	壬
315	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊	迅	陣	靭		
す										
315									笥	諏
316	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
317	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
318	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢	趨	雛	据	杉
319	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾					
320	澄	摺	寸							
せ										
320					世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲
322	栖	正	清	牲	生	盛	精	聖	声	製
323	西	誠	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税
324	脆	隻	席	惜	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積
325	籍	績	脊	責	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙
326	接	摂	折	設	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌
327	蝉	仙	先	千	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦
328	扇	撰	栓	栴	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
329	煽	旋	穿	箭	線					
330		繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践
331	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糎					
そ										
332						噌	塑	岨	措	曾
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎					
340		臓	蔵	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫	尊	損	村	遜
た										
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350		叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿
351	棚	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦
352	担	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪
353	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断
354	暖	檀	段	男	談					
ち										
354						値	知	地	弛	恥
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
356	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着
357	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷
358	註	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著	貯
359	丁	兆	凋	喋	寵	帖	帳	庁	弔	張
360	彫	徴	懲	挑	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺
361	聴	脹	腸	蝶	調	諜	超	跳	銚	長
362	頂	鳥	勅	捗	直	朕	沈	珍	賃	鎮
363	陳									

Last Digit kanji code table — Column 1

つ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
363								津	墜	椎
364	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
365	漬	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壺
366	嬬	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴				

て

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓					
370		邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥	摘	擢	敵	滴
371	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲	徹	撤	轍	迭
372	鉄	典	填	天	展	店	添	纏	甜	貼
373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱	田	電		

と

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
373									兎	吐
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟
375	賭	途	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴
376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套
377	宕	島	嶋	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟
378	盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等
379	答	筒	糖	統	到					
380		董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃	透
381	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂	導
382	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅	峠
383	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤	毒
384	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶	苫
385	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚	遁
386	頓	呑	曇	鈍						

な

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
388	軟	難	汝							

に

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
388				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389	虹	廿	日	乳	入					
390	如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認			

ぬ～の

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
390									濡	禰
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃

Last Digit kanji code table — Column 2

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
392	粘	乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
393	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					

は

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
395	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺	輩	配
396	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買	売	賠
397	陪	這	蝿	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥	博	拍
398	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫	曝	漠
399	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦					
400		函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	

ひ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
405										匪
406	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	斐
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410		鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱
411	肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐
412	百	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表
413	評	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜
414	蛭	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻
415	敏	瓶								

ふ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
415			不	付	埠	夫	婦	富	冨	布
416	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父	符	腐
417	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附	侮	撫
418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風	葺	蕗
419	伏	副	復	幅	服					
420		福	腹	複	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏
421	物	鮒	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮
422	粉	糞	紛	雰	文	聞				

へ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
422							丙	併	兵	塀
423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米	頁

Last Digit kanji code table — Column 3

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏	変
425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩	弁
426	鞭									

ほ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
426		保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補	輔
427	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩	倣
428	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩	庖
429	抱	捧	放	方	朋					
430		法	泡	烹	砲	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬
431	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏
432	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	忙	房	暴
433	望	某	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿
434	鉾	防	吠	頬	北	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴
435	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃	没	殆	堀	幌	奔
436	本	翻	凡	盆						

ま

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
436					摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	末	沫	迄	侭
439	繭	麿	磨	万	慢	満				
440	漫	蔓								

み

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
440				味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密
441	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠	

む

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
441										務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	

め

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				

も

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
444							摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							

や

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
447				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									

Last Digit kanji code table — Column 4

ゆ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
449							愉	愈	油	癒
450		諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	

よ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	

ら

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
456										羅
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		

り

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
458									利	吏
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460		痢	裏	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立
461	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅	虜	了	亮	僚
463	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼	猟	療	瞭	稜
464	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵	領	力	緑	倫
465	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟

る～れ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類	令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
470	蓮	連	錬							

ろ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
470					呂	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							

わ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
473				倭	和	話	歪	賄	脇	惑
474	枠	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾
475	碗	腕								
476										

Character Code Table (First Three Digits 477–516)

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
477										
478										
479										
480			弌	丐	丕	个	丱	丶	丼	丿
481	乖	乘	亂	亅	豫	亊	舒	弍	亞	亟
482	亠	亢	亰	亳	亶	从	仍	仄	仆	仂
483	仗	仞	仭	仟	价	伉	佚	估	佛	佝
484	佗	佇	佶	侈	侏	侘	佻	佩	佰	侑
485	佯	來	侖	儘	俔	俟	俎	俘	俛	俑
486	俚	俐	俤	俥	倚	倨	倔	倪	倥	倅
487	伜	俶	倡	倩	倬	俾	俯	們	倆	偃
488	假	會	偕	偐	偈	做	偖	偬	偸	傀
489	傚	傅	傴	傲						
490			僉	僊	傳	僂	僖	僞	僥	僭
491	僣	僮	價	僵	儉	儁	儂	儖	儕	儔
492	儚	儡	儺	儷	儼	儻	儿	兀	兒	兌
493	兔	兢	竸	兩	兪	兮	冀	冂	囘	册
494	冉	冏	冑	冓	冕	冖	冤	冦	冢	冩
495	冪	冫	决	冱	冲	冰	况	冽	凅	凉
496	凛	几	處	凩	凭	凰	凵	凾	刄	刋
497	刔	刎	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剏	剄	剋
498	剌	剞	剔	剪	剴	剩	剳	剿	剽	劍
499	劔	劔	劈	劑	辨	辧	劬	劭	劼	劵
500	勁	勍	勗	勞	勣	勦	飭	勠	勳	勵
501	勸	勹	匆	匈	甸	匍	匐	匏	匕	匚
502	匣	匯	匱	匳	匸	區	卆	卅	丗	卉
503	卍	凖	卞	卩	卮	夘	卻	卷	厂	厖
504	厠	厦	厥	厮	厰	厶	參	簒	雙	叟
505	曼	燮	叮	叨	叭	叺	吁	吽	呀	听
506	吭	吼	吮	吶	吩	吝	呎	咏	呵	咎
507	呟	呱	呷	呰	咒	呻	咀	呶	咄	咐
508	咆	哇	咢	咸	咥	咬	哄	哈	咨	咫
509	哂	咤	咾	咼	哘	哥	哦	唏	唔	哽
510	哮	哭	哺	哢	唹	啀	啣	啌	售	啜
511	啅	啖	啗	唸	唳	啝	喙	喀	咯	喊
512	喟	啻	啾	喘	喞	單	啼	喃	喩	喇
513	喨	嗚	嗅	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	嗔	嘔	嗷
514	嘖	嗾	嗽	嘛	嗹	噎	噐	營	嘴	嘶
515	嘲	嘸	噫	噤	嘯	噬	噪	嚆	嚀	嚊
516	嚠	嚔	嚏	嚥	嚮	嚶	嚴	囂	嚼	囁

Character Code Table (First Three Digits 517–556)

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
517	囃	嘈	囀	囈	囎	囑	囓	囗	囮	囹
518	圀	囿	圄	圉	圈	國	圍	圓	團	圖
519	嗇	圜	圦							
520			圷	圸	坎	圻	址	坏	坩	埀
521	垈	坡	坿	垉	垓	垠	垳	垤	垪	垰
522	埃	埆	埔	埓	埖	埣	堡	埒	堝	堡
523	塢	塋	塰	毀	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹	墟
524	墫	墺	壞	墻	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑	壗
525	壙	壘	壥	壜	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹	壻
526	壼	壽	夂	夊	夐	夛	梦	夥	夬	夭
527	夲	夸	夾	竒	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘	奢
528	奠	奧	奬	奩						
529			奸	妁	妝	佞	侫	妣	妲	姆
530	姨	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟	娑	娜	娉
531	娚	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢	婪	媚	媼
532	媾	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦	嫩	嫖	嫺
533	嫻	嬌	嬋	嬖	嬲	嫐	嬪	嬶	嬾	孃
534	孅	孀	孑	孕	孚	孛	孥	孜	孳	孚
535	孵	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦	宸	寃	寇
536	寉	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞	寥	寫	寰
537	寶	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓	尠	尢	尨
538	尸	尹	屁	屆	屎	屓	屐	屏	孱	屬
539	屮	乢	屶	屹	岌					
540			屺	岑	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶	岼
541	岷	峅	岾	峇	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭	嶌
542	峪	崋	崕	崗	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔	崢
543	崚	崙	崘	嵌	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳	嵶
544	嶀	嶄	嶂	嶢	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐	嶷
545	嶼	巉	巍	巓	巓	巒	巖	巛	巫	已
546	巵	帋	帚	帙	帑	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃
547	幀	幎	幗	幔	幟	幢	幤	幇	幵	并
548	幺	麼	广	庠	廁	廂	廈	廐	廏	廖
549	廣	廝	廚	廛	廢					
550			廡	廞	廡	廨	廩	廬	廱	廳
551	廰	廴	廸	廾	弃	弉	彝	彜	弋	弑
552	弖	弩	弭	弸	彁	彈	彌	彎	弯	彑
553	彖	彗	彙	彡	彭	彳	彷	徃	徂	彿
554	徊	很	徑	徇	從	徙	徘	徠	徨	徭
555	徼	忖	忻	忤	忸	忱	忝	悳	忿	怡
556	恠	怙	怐	怩	怎	怱	怛			

Character Code Table (First Three Digits 557–596)

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
557	怕	怫	怦	快	怏	怺	恚	恁	恪	恷
558	恟	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤	恂	恬	恫
559	恙	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚				
560			悄	悛	悖	悗	悒	悧	悋	惡
561	悸	惠	惓	悴	忰	悽	惆	悵	惘	慍
562	愕	愆	惶	惷	愀	惴	惺	愃	愡	惱
563	惻	惱	愍	愎	慇	愾	愨	愧	慊	愿
564	愼	愬	愴	愽	慂	慄	慳	慷	慘	慙
565	慚	慫	慴	慯	慥	慱	慟	慝	慓	慵
566	憙	憖	憇	憬	憔	憚	憊	憑	憫	憮
567	懌	懊	應	懷	懈	懃	懆	憺	懋	罹
568	懍	懦	懣	懶	懺	懴	懿	懽	懼	懾
569	戀	戈	戉	戍	戌	戔	戛			
570			戞	戡	截	戮	戰	戲	戳	扁
571	扎	扞	扣	扛	扠	扨	扼	抂	抉	找
572	抒	抓	抖	拔	抃	抔	拗	拑	抻	拏
573	拿	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拊	拂	拇	抛
574	拉	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	挈	拯	拵	捐
575	挾	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀	掫	捶	掣
576	掏	掉	掟	掵	捫	捩	掾	揩	揀	揆
577	揣	揉	插	揶	揄	搖	搴	搆	搓	搦
578	搶	攝	搗	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶	摎	攪
579	撕	撓	撥	撩	撈	撼				
580			據	擒	擅	擇	撻	擘	擂	擱
581	擧	舉	擠	擡	抬	擣	擯	攬	擶	擴
582	擲	擺	攀	擽	攘	攜	攅	攤	攣	攫
583	攴	攵	收	攸	畋	效	敖	敕	敍	敘
584	敞	敝	敲	數	斂	斃	變	斛	斟	斫
585	斷	旃	旆	旁	旄	旌	旒	旛	旙	无
586	旡	旱	杲	昊	昃	旻	杳	昵	昶	昴
587	昜	晏	晄	晉	晁	晞	晝	晤	晧	晨
588	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暘	暝
589	曁	暹	曉	暾	暼					
590			曄	暸	曖	曚	曠	昿	曦	曩
591	曰	曵	曷	朏	朖	朞	朦	朧	霸	朮
592	束	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞	杠	杙	杣
593	杤	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌	枋	枦	枡
594	枅	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩	枸	柤	柞
595	柝	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧	檜	栞	框
596	栩	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫	桙	档	桴

Character Code Table (First Three Digits 597–636)

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
597	桷	桿	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮
598	梹	桴	梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊
599	椈	棘	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍			
600			棔	棧	棕	椶	椒	椄	棗	棣
601	椥	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚	椣	椥	棹
602	椰	楜	楸	楫	楔	楾	楮	椹	楴	椽
603	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁	楪	榲	榮	槐
604	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨	槊	槝	榻	槃
605	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕	榴	槞	槨	樂
606	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧	樅	榱	樞	槭
607	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣	樓	橄	樌	橲
608	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦	橈	樸	樢	檐
609	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣					
610			檗	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬
611	櫞	櫑	櫟	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫻
612	欖	鬱	欟	欸	欷	盜	欹	飮	歇	歃
613	歉	歐	歙	歔	歛	歟	歡	歸	歹	歿
614	殀	殄	殃	殍	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫
615	殯	殲	殱	殳	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟
616	毬	毫	毳	毯	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤
617	氣	汞	汕	汢	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛
618	汾	汨	汳	沒	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗
619	泅	泝	沮	沱	沾					
620			沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍	洶
621	洫	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣	涓
622	浤	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹	渕
623	渊	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌	淨
624	淒	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭	湮
625	渮	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶	湍
626	渟	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂	溪
627	溘	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔	滕
628	溏	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸	滾
629	漿	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌				
630			漾	漓	滷	澆	潺	潸	澁	澀
631	潯	潛	濳	潭	澂	潼	潘	澎	澑	濂
632	潦	澳	澣	澡	澤	澹	濆	澪	濟	濕
633	濬	濔	濘	濱	濮	濛	瀉	瀋	濺	瀑
634	瀁	瀏	濾	瀛	瀚	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰
635	瀾	瀲	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱	炬	炸
636	炳	炮	烟	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽	焜	焙

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
637	熙	熈	煦	熒	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄
638	煩	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎
639	燠	燬	燧	燵	燼					
640		燹	燿	爍	爐	爛	爨	爭	爬	爰
641	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牆	牋	牘	牴	牾
642	犂	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢	犧	犾	犹	狃
643	狆	狄	狎	狒	狢	狠	狡	狹	狷	倏
644	猗	猊	猜	猖	猝	猴	猯	猩	猥	猾
645	獎	獏	默	獗	獪	獨	獰	獸	獵	獻
646	獺	珈	玳	珎	玻	珀	珥	珮	珞	璢
647	琅	瑯	琥	珸	琲	琺	瑕	琿	瑟	瑙
648	瑁	瑜	瑩	瑰	瑣	瑪	瑶	瑾	璋	璞
649	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱					
650		瓠	瓣	瓧	瓩	瓮	瓲	瓰	瓱	瓸
651	瓷	甄	甃	甅	甌	甎	甍	甕	甓	甞
652	甦	甬	甼	畄	畍	畊	畉	畛	畆	畚
653	畩	畤	畧	畫	畭	畸	當	疆	疇	畴
654	疊	疉	疂	疔	疚	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳
655	疵	疽	疸	疼	疱	痃	痊	痒	痙	痣
656	痞	痾	痿	痼	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳	瘋
657	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴	瘰
658	瘻	癇	癈	癆	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨	癩
659	癪	癧	癬	癰						
660		癲	癶	癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎
661	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
663	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷
664	眸	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹
665	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼
666	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碩	碯	碪	碚	碣	碯	磊
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬					
670		磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礒	礑	礙	礬
671	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祕	祓	祺	祿
672	禊	禝	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺	秉
673	秕	秧	秬	秡	秣	稈	稍	稘	稙	稠
674	稟	禀	稱	稻	稾	稷	穃	穂	穉	穡
675	穢	穩	龝	穰	穹	穽	窈	窗	窕	窘
676	窖	窩	竈	窰	窶	竅	竄	窿	邃	竇

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
677	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡	竢
678	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘	笙
679	笞	笵	笨	笑	筐					
680		筺	笄	筍	笋	筌	筅	筵	筥	筴
681	筧	筰	筱	筬	筮	箝	箘	箟	箍	箜
682	箚	箋	箒	箏	筝	箙	篋	篁	篌	篏
683	箴	篆	篝	篩	簑	簔	篦	篥	籠	簀
684	簇	簓	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪
685	簟	簷	簫	簿	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籘	籟	籤	籖	籥	籬	籵	粃	粐	粤
687	粭	粢	粫	粡	粨	粳	粲	�	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糺	紆						
690		紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲	紿
691	紵	絆	絳	絖	絎	絲	絨	絮	絏	絣
692	經	綉	綏	絛	綛	綺	綮	綣	綵	緇
693	綽	綫	總	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟	綰	緘
694	緝	緤	緞	緻	緲	緡	縅	縊	縣	縡
695	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦	縻	縵
696	縹	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繖	繞	繙
697	繚	繹	繪	繩	繼	繻	纃	緕	繽	辮
698	繿	纈	纉	續	纒	纐	纓	纔	纖	纎
699	纛	纜	缸	缺						
700		罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘
701	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃	羈
702	羇	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
703	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
704	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
706	聚	聟	聢	聨	聳	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冐	肬
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脣	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂	膠	膕	膤
712	膣	腟	膓	膩	膰	膵	膾	膸	膽	臀
713	臂	膺	臉	臍	臑	臙	臘	臈	臚	臟
714	臠	臡	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與
715	舊	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	艀	艙
716	艘	艝	艚	艟	艤	艢	艨	艪	艫	舮

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
717	艱	艷	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬
718	苡	苣	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻
719	苹	苞	茆	苜	茉	苙	茵			
720		茴	茖	茲	茱	荀	茹	荐	荅	茯
721	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢	莖
722	茣	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵	荳	荵	莠	莉
723	莨	菴	萓	菫	菎	菽	萃	菘	萋	菁
724	菷	萇	菠	菲	萍	萢	萠	莽	萸	蔆
725	菻	葭	萪	萼	蕚	蒄	葷	葫	蒭	葮
726	蒂	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹	萵	蓊	葢	蒹
727	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖
728	蒡	蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘	蔬	蔟	蔕	蔔
729	蓼	蕀	蕣	蕘	蕈					
730		蕁	蘂	蕋	蕕	薀	薤	薈	薑	薊
731	薨	蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾	薐
732	藉	薺	藏	薹	藐	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹
733	蘊	蘓	蘋	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿
734	虀	虒	虓	虔	蚊	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄
735	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟
736	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉
737	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚
738	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙
739	蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅						
740		螢	蟆	螟	螂	螯	蟋	螽	蟀	蟐
741	雖	螫	蟄	螳	蟇	蟆	螻	蟯	蟲	蟠
742	蠏	蠍	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎	蟒	蠑	蠖	蠕
743	蠢	蠡	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧	蠻	衄	衂	衒
744	衙	衞	衢	衫	袁	衾	袞	衵	衽	袵
745	衲	袂	袗	袮	袙	袢	袍	袤	袰	袿
746	袱	裃	裄	裔	裘	裙	裝	裹	褂	裼
747	裴	裨	裲	褄	褌	褊	褓	襃	褞	褥
748	褪	褫	襁	襄	褻	褶	褸	襌	褝	襠
749	襞	襦	襤	襭						
750		襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃	覈	覊	覓
751	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲	覺	覽	覿
752	觀	觚	觜	觝	觛	觧	觴	觸	訃	訖
753	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛	詒	詆
754	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誅	誂	誄	誨	誡
755	誑	誥	誦	誚	誣	諄	諍	諂	諚	諳
756	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢	諷	諞	諛	謌

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
757	謌	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謠		
758	謨	謳	鞫	謦	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	謚
759	譖	譛	譚	譫						
760		譟	譬	譯	譴	譽	讀	讌	讎	讒
761	讓	讖	讙	讚	谺	豁	谿	豈	豌	豎
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊
763	貍	貎	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踽	踴	蹊					
770		蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤	蹠	踪
771	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼	躁	躇	躅	躄	躋
772	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙	躪	躡	躬	躰	軆
773	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軛	軣	軼	軻	軫
774	軾	輊	輅	輕	輒	輙	輓	輜	輟	輛
775	輌	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅	轂	輾	轌	轉
776	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣
777	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢	迪	迯	邇	迴
778	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡	逍	逞	逖	逋
779	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸					
780		遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遖	遘
781	遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽	邁	邀
782	邊	邉	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢	郤	扈
783	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖	酘	酣
784	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢	醫	醯
785	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋	釐	釖
786	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿	鈔	鈬
787	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉅	鉉	鉤	鉈	銕	鈿
788	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銹	銷
789	鋩	錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
790		錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜	鍠
791	鍼	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗
792	鏨	鏥	鏘	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐡
793	鐘	鐓	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐵	鐡	鐺
794	鑁	鑒	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰
795	鑵	鑷	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇
796	閊	閔	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼

First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
797	閹	閿	闊	濶	闋	闈	闌	闑	闔	闐
798	關	闛	闚	闞	阡	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌
799	陏	陋	陷	陜	陞					
800		陝	陟	陦	陲	陬	隍	隘	隕	隗
801	險	隧	隱	隲	隰	隴	隶	隸	隹	雎
802	雋	雉	雍	襍	雜	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
803	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖	霙	霤	霪	霰
804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靉	靜	靠
805	靤	靦	靨	勒	靫	靱	靹	鞅	靼	鞁
806	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳
807	鞴	韃	韆	韈	韋	韜	韭	齏	韲	竟
808	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頡	頷	頽	顆
809	顏	顋	顫	顯	顰					
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	餉	餤	餔	餘	餡	餝
812	餞	餤	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅
813	饐	饋	饑	饒	饌	饕	馗	馘	馥	馭
814	馮	馼	駟	駛	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騒
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷					
820		髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧
821	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯	鬲	魄	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	魺	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕
825	鰔	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮
826	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚
827	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫
828	鳩	鴃	鴆	鴪	鴦	鶯	鴣	鴟	鵄	鴕
829	鴒	鵁	鴿	鴾	鵆	鵈				
830		鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇
831	鶫	鵯	鵺	鶚	鶤	鶩	鶲	鷄	鶫	鶻
832	鶸	鶺	鷆	鷏	鷂	鶯	鷸	鷦	鷭	鷯
833	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁	麈
834	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑	麝	麥	麩	麸	麪
835	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	點	黝
836	黠	黥	黨	黯	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼

First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
837	黽	黿	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊	齒
838	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡	齦	齧	齬	齪	齷
839	齲	齶	龕	龜	龠					
840		堯	槇	遙	瑤	凜	熙				

First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

Pictograph List

Note ▶ Pictographs do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible Vodafone handsets.

Tip ▶ Pictographs in ⬜ are animated.

Specifications

Weight	Approximately 120 g (with battery)
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 150 minutes (3G) Approximately 240 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time (when closed)	Approximately 370 hours (3G) Approximately 370 hours (GSM)
Video Call Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 1.5 hours
Charging Time (Power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 140 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 52 x 102 x 24 mm (clamshell closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)
Mobile Light LED Properties	a) Emission Duration: Continuous b) Wavelength 　Red:　Centre 619 nm/ 612 - 625 nm 　Green: Centre 525 nm/ 520 - 530 nm 　Blue:　Centre 470 nm/ 465 - 475 nm c) Maximum Emission Output 　Red:　1.982 mW 　Green: 0.472 mW 　Blue:　1.172 mW

- Values left were calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with clamshell closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if 804SH is out-of-range/signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).
- Talk Time/Standby Time decrease with frequent use of Display/Keypad backlights.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may decrease when a V-application is active.
- Talk Time/Standby Time decrease with handset use in poor signal conditions (see **P.1-12** "Battery Time").
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

■AC Charger

Power Source	AC 100V-240V, 50/60 Hz
Power Consumption	12VA
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.2V/650 mA
Charging Temperature	5℃ to 35℃
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 55 x 45 x 22 mm (without protruding parts, cord)
Cord Length	Approximately 1.5 m

■Battery

Voltage	3.7 V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	900 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 35.8 x 4.5 x 55 mm (without protruding parts)

■LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones
●LCD Remote/Mic

Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 17 x 83 x 18.6 mm (without cord)
Weight	Approximately 24 g
Cord Length	Approximately 80 cm

●Ear Buds and Cord

Weight	Approximately 11 g
Cord Length	Approximately 1 m

Memory List

Messaging	
Received	Approximately 4 M
Drafts	Approximately 1 M*
Sent	Approximately 1 M*
Unsent	Approximately 1 M*
Templates	Approximately 200 KB

*Drafts, Sent and Unsent share memory.

V-applications	
V-appli	Approximately 20 MB (100 items)*

*Shared with other folders in Data Folder (see **P.9-2**).

Index

Warranty & After-Sales Services

■Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase 804SH.
- **Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.**
- **Read through contents and keep in a safe place.**
- **The warranty term is described in the warranty.**

■After-Sales Services

See **P.18-4** "Troubleshooting" before contacting Vodafone for service or repairs. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact Vodafone Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see **P.18-24**) for your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.
- **During the warranty term, repairs are performed under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.**
- **After the warranty term, repairs, if possible, are performed upon your request at your expense.**

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest Vodafone shop or Vodafone Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.18-24**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

Note ▶
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

If you have questions about Vodafone handsets or services, please call General Information. For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

Vodafone Customer Centres
From a Vodafone handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance

Vodafone International Call Centre
From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (International charges will apply.)

■**Call these numbers toll free from landlines.**

Subscription Area	Service Centre	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane	General Information	☎0088-259-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-259-113
Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi	General Information	☎0088-247-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-247-113
Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-250-113

Vodafone 804SH Instruction Manual

March 2006, First Edition
Vodafone K.K.
For additional information, please visit a Vodafone shop.

Model: Vodafone 804SH
Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation